

**ANNEX 2****DRAFT AMENDMENTS TO PART A OF THE SEAFARERS' TRAINING,  
CERTIFICATION AND WATCHKEEPING (STCW) CODE****PART A****Mandatory standards regarding provisions of the annex to the STCW Convention****Introduction**

1 This part of the STCW Code contains mandatory provisions to which specific reference is made in the annex to the International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watchkeeping for Seafarers, 1978, as amended, hereinafter referred to as the STCW Convention. These provisions give in detail the minimum standards required to be maintained by Parties in order to give full and complete effect to the Convention.

2 Also contained in this part are standards of competence required to be demonstrated by candidates for the issue and revalidation of certificates of competency under the provisions of the STCW Convention. To clarify the linkage between the alternative certification provisions of chapter VII and the certification provisions of chapters II, III and IV, the abilities specified in the standards of competence are grouped as appropriate under the following seven functions:

- .1 Navigation
- .2 Cargo handling and stowage
- .3 Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board
- .4 Marine engineering
- .5 Electrical, electronic and control engineering
- .6 Maintenance and repair
- .7 Radiocommunications

at the following levels of responsibility:

- .1 Management level
- .2 Operational level
- .3 Support level

Functions and levels of responsibility are identified by subtitle in the tables of standards of competence given in chapters II, III, and IV of this part. The scope of the function at the level of responsibility stated in a subtitle is defined by the abilities listed under it in column 1 of the table. The meaning of "function" and "level of responsibility" is defined in general terms in section A-I/1 below.

3 The numbering of the sections of this part corresponds with the numbering of the regulations contained in the annex to the STCW Convention. The text of the sections may be divided into numbered parts and paragraphs, but such numbering is unique to that text alone.

## CHAPTER I

### Standards regarding general provisions

#### Section A-I/1

##### *Definitions and clarifications*

1 The definitions and clarifications contained in article II and regulation I/1 apply equally to the terms used in parts A and B of this Code. In addition, the following supplementary definitions apply only to this Code:

- .1 *Standard of competence* means the level of proficiency to be achieved for the proper performance of functions on board ship in accordance with the internationally agreed criteria as set forth herein and incorporating prescribed standards or levels of knowledge, understanding and demonstrated skill;
- .2 *Management level* means the level of responsibility associated with:
  - .2.1 serving as master, chief mate, chief engineer officer or second engineer officer on board a seagoing ship, and
  - .2.2 ensuring that all functions within the designated area of responsibility are properly performed;
- .3 *Operational level* means the level of responsibility associated with:
  - .3.1 serving as officer in charge of a navigational or engineering watch or as designated duty engineer for periodically unmanned machinery spaces or as radio operator on board a seagoing ship, and
  - .3.2 maintaining direct control over the performance of all functions within the designated area of responsibility in accordance with proper procedures and under the direction of an individual serving in the management level for that area of responsibility;
- .4 *Support level* means the level of responsibility associated with performing assigned tasks, duties or responsibilities on board a seagoing ship under the direction of an individual serving in the operational or management level;
- .5 *Evaluation criteria* are the entries appearing in column 4 [Criteria] of the “Specification of Minimum Standard of Competence” tables in part A and provide the means for an assessor to judge whether or not a candidate can perform the related tasks, duties and responsibilities; and

- .6 *Independent evaluation* means an evaluation by suitably qualified persons, independent of, or external to, the unit or activity being evaluated, to verify that the administrative and operational procedures at all levels are managed, organized, undertaken and monitored internally in order to ensure their fitness for purpose and achievement of stated objectives.

## **Section A-I/2**

### *Certificates and endorsements*

1 Where, as provided in regulation I/2, paragraph 6, the endorsement required by article VI of the Convention is incorporated in the wording of the certificate itself, the certificate shall be issued in the format shown hereunder, provided that the words “or until the date of expiry of any extension of the validity of this certificate as may be shown overleaf” appearing on the front of the form and the provisions for recording extension of the validity appearing on the back of the form shall be omitted where the certificate is required to be replaced upon its expiry. Guidance on completion of the form is contained in section B-I/2 of this Code.

(Official Seal)

(COUNTRY)

**CERTIFICATE ISSUED UNDER THE PROVISIONS OF  
 THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION ON STANDARDS OF TRAINING,  
 CERTIFICATION AND WATCHKEEPING FOR SEAFARERS, 1978,  
 AS AMENDED**

The Government of ..... certifies that .....  
 has been found duly qualified in accordance with the provisions of regulation ..... of the  
 above Convention, as amended, and has been found competent to perform the following functions, at the  
 levels specified, subject to any limitations indicated until ..... or until the date of expiry  
 of any extension of the validity of this certificate as may be shown overleaf:

FUNCTION	LEVEL	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

The lawful holder of this certificate may serve in the following capacity or capacities specified in the  
 applicable safe manning requirements of the Administration:

CAPACITY	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

Certificate No. .... issued on .....

(Official Seal)

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

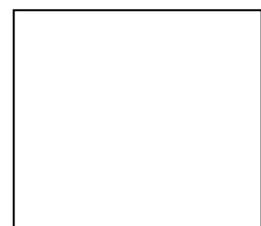
.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The original of this certificate must be kept available in accordance with regulation I/2, paragraph 11 of  
 the Convention while serving on a ship.

Date of birth of the holder of the certificate .....

Signature of the holder of the certificate .....

Photograph of the holder of the certificate



The validity of this certificate is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The validity of this certificate is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of the authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

2 Except as provided in paragraph 1, the form used to attest the issue of a certificate shall be as shown hereunder, provided that the words “or until the date of expiry of any extension of the validity of this endorsement as may be shown overleaf” appearing on the front of the form and the provisions for recording extension of the validity appearing on the back of the form shall be omitted where the endorsement is required to be replaced upon its expiry. Guidance on completion of the form is contained in section B-I/2 of this Code.

*(Official Seal)*

(COUNTRY)

**ENDORSEMENT ATTESTING THE ISSUE OF A CERTIFICATE  
 UNDER THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION ON  
 STANDARDS OF TRAINING, CERTIFICATION AND WATCHKEEPING  
 FOR SEAFARERS, 1978, AS AMENDED**

The Government of ..... certifies that certificate No. .... has been issued to ..... who has been found duly qualified in accordance with the provisions of regulation ..... of the above Convention, as amended, and has been found competent to perform the following functions, at the levels specified, subject to any limitations indicated until ..... or until the date of expiry of any extension of the validity of this endorsement as may be shown overleaf:

FUNCTION	LEVEL	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

The lawful holder of this endorsement may serve in the following capacity or capacities specified in the applicable safe manning requirements of the Administration:

CAPACITY	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

Endorsement No. .... issued on .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The original of this endorsement must be kept available in accordance with regulation I/2, paragraph 11 of the Convention while serving on a ship.

Date of birth of the holder of the certificate .....

Signature of the holder of the certificate .....

Photograph of the holder of the certificate



The validity of this endorsement is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The validity of this endorsement is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of the authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

3 The form used to attest the recognition of a certificate shall be as shown hereunder, except that the words “or until the date of expiry of any extension of the validity of this endorsement as may be shown overleaf” appearing on the front of the form and the provisions for recording extension of the validity appearing on the back of the form shall be omitted where the endorsement is required to be replaced upon its expiry. Guidance on completion of the form is contained in section B-I/2 of this Code.

(Official Seal)

(COUNTRY)

**ENDORSEMENT ATTESTING THE RECOGNITION OF A CERTIFICATE  
 UNDER THE PROVISIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL CONVENTION ON  
 STANDARDS OF TRAINING, CERTIFICATION AND WATCHKEEPING  
 FOR SEAFARERS, 1978, AS AMENDED**

The Government of ..... certifies that certificate No. .... issued to ..... by or on behalf of the Government of ..... is duly recognized in accordance with the provisions of regulation I/10 of the above Convention, as amended, and the lawful holder is authorized to perform the following functions, at the levels specified, subject to any limitations indicated until ..... or until the date of expiry of any extension of the validity of this endorsement as may be shown overleaf:

FUNCTION	LEVEL	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

The lawful holder of this endorsement may serve in the following capacity or capacities specified in the applicable safe manning requirements of the Administration:

CAPACITY	LIMITATIONS APPLYING (IF ANY)

Endorsement No. .... issued on .....

(Official Seal)

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

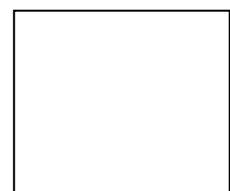
.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The original of this endorsement must be kept available in accordance with regulation I/2, paragraph 11 of the Convention while serving on a ship.

Date of birth of the holder of the certificate .....

Signature of the holder of the certificate .....

Photograph of the holder of the certificate



The validity of this endorsement is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of duly authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

The validity of this endorsement is hereby extended until .....

*(Official Seal)*

.....  
*Signature of the authorized official*

Date of revalidation .....

.....  
*Name of duly authorized official*

4 In using formats which may be different from those set forth in this section, pursuant to regulation I/2, paragraph 10, Parties shall ensure that in all cases:

- .1 all information relating to the identity and personal description of the holder, including name, date of birth, photograph and signature, along with the date on which the document was issued, shall be displayed on the same side of the documents; and
- .2 all information relating to the capacity or capacities in which the holder is entitled to serve in accordance with the applicable safe manning requirements of the Administration, as well as any limitations, shall be prominently displayed and easily identified.

## **ISSUE AND REGISTRATION OF CERTIFICATES**

### **Approval of seagoing service**

5 In approving seagoing service required by the Convention, Parties should ensure that the service concerned is relevant to the qualification being applied for, bearing in mind that, apart from the initial familiarization with service in seagoing ships, the purpose of such service is to allow the seafarer to be instructed in and to practise, under appropriate supervision, those safe and proper seagoing practices, procedures and routines which are relevant to the qualification applied for.

### **Approval of training courses**

6 In approving training courses and programmes, Parties should take into account that the various IMO Model Courses identified by footnotes in part A of this Code can assist in the preparation of such courses and programmes and ensure that the detailed learning objectives recommended therein are suitably covered.

### **Electronic access to registers**

7 In the maintenance of the electronic register in accordance with paragraph 15 of regulation I/2, provisions shall be made to allow controlled electronic access to such register or registers to allow Parties and companies to confirm:

- .1 the name of the seafarer to whom such certificate, endorsement or other qualification was issued, its relevant number, date of issue, and date of expiry;
- .2 the capacity in which the holder may serve and any limitations attaching thereto; and
- .3 the functions the holder may perform, the levels authorized and any limitations attaching thereto.

### **Development of a database for certificate registration**

8 In implementing the requirement in paragraph 14 of regulation I/2 of the revised STCW Convention for the maintenance of a register of certificates and endorsements, a standard database is not necessary provided that all the relevant information is recorded and available in accordance with regulation I/2.

9 The following items of information should be recorded and available, either on paper or electronically, in accordance with regulation I/2:

.1 **Status of certificate**

Valid  
Suspended  
Cancelled  
Reported lost  
Destroyed

with a record of changes to status to be kept, including dates of changes.

.2 **Certificate details**

Seafarer's name  
Date of birth  
Nationality  
Gender  
Preferably a photograph  
Relevant document number

Date of issue  
Date of expiry  
Last revalidation date  
Details of dispensation(s)

**.3 Competency details**

STCW competency standard (e.g., regulation II/1)  
Capacity  
Function  
Level of responsibility  
Endorsements  
Limitations

**.4 Medical details**

Date of issue of latest medical certificate relating to the issue or revalidation of the certificate of competency.

**Section A-I/3**

*Principles governing near-coastal voyages*

1 When a Party defines near-coastal voyages, *inter alia*, for the purpose of applying variations to the subjects listed in column 2 of the standard of competence tables contained in chapters II and III of part A of the Code, for the issue of certificates valid for service in ships entitled to fly the flag of that Party and engaged on such voyages, account shall be taken of the following factors, bearing in mind the effect on the safety and security of all ships and on the marine environment:

- .1 type of ship and the trade in which it is engaged;
- .2 gross tonnage of the ship and the power in kilowatts of the main propulsion machinery;
- .3 nature and length of the voyages;
- .4 maximum distance from a port of refuge;
- .5 adequacy of the coverage and accuracy of navigational position-fixing devices;
- .6 weather conditions normally prevailing in the near-coastal voyages area;
- .7 provision of shipboard and coastal communication facilities for search and rescue; and
- .8 the availability of shore-based support, regarding especially technical maintenance on board.

2 It is not intended that ships engaged on near-coastal voyages extend their voyages worldwide, under the excuse that they are navigating constantly within the limits of designated near-coastal voyages of neighbouring Parties.

#### **Section A-I/4**

##### *Control procedures*

1 The assessment procedure provided for in regulation I/4, paragraph 1.3, resulting from any of the occurrences mentioned therein shall take the form of a verification that members of the crew who are required to be competent do in fact possess the necessary skills related to the occurrence.

2 It shall be borne in mind when making this assessment that onboard procedures are relevant to the International Safety Management (ISM) Code and that the provisions of this Convention are confined to the competence to safely execute those procedures.

3 Control procedures under this Convention shall be confined to the standards of competence of the individual seafarers on board and their skills related to watchkeeping as defined in part A of this Code. Onboard assessment of competency shall commence with verification of the certificates of the seafarers.

4 Notwithstanding verification of the certificate, the assessment under regulation I/4, paragraph 1.3 can require the seafarer to demonstrate the related competency at the place of duty. Such demonstration may include verification that operational requirements in respect of watchkeeping standards have been met and that there is a proper response to emergency situations within the seafarer's level of competence.

5 In the assessment, only the methods for demonstrating competence together with the criteria for its evaluation and the scope of the standards given in part A of this Code shall be used.

6 Assessment of competency related to security shall be conducted for those seafarers with specific security duties only in case of clear grounds, as provided for in chapter XI/2 of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS). In all other cases, it shall be confined to the verification of the certificates and/or endorsements of the seafarers.

#### **Section A-I/5**

##### *National provisions*

The provisions of regulation I/5 shall not be interpreted as preventing the allocation of tasks for training under supervision or in cases of *force majeure*.

#### **Section A-I/6**

##### *Training and assessment*

1 Each Party shall ensure that all training and assessment of seafarers for certification under the Convention is:

- .1 structured in accordance with written programmes, including such methods and media of delivery, procedures, and course material as are necessary to achieve the prescribed standard of competence; and
- .2 conducted, monitored, evaluated and supported by persons qualified in accordance with paragraphs 4, 5 and 6.

2 Persons conducting in-service training or assessment on board ship shall only do so when such training or assessment will not adversely affect the normal operation of the ship and they can dedicate their time and attention to training or assessment.

### **Qualifications of instructors, supervisors and assessors\***

3 Each Party shall ensure that instructors, supervisors and assessors are appropriately qualified for the particular types and levels of training or assessment of competence of seafarers either on board or ashore, as required under the Convention, in accordance with the provisions of this section.

### **In-service training**

4 Any person conducting in-service training of a seafarer, either on board or ashore, which is intended to be used in qualifying for certification under the Convention, shall:

- .1 have an appreciation of the training programme and an understanding of the specific training objectives for the particular type of training being conducted;
- .2 be qualified in the task for which training is being conducted; and
- .3 if conducting training using a simulator:
  - .3.1 have received appropriate guidance in instructional techniques involving the use of simulators, and
  - .3.2 have gained practical operational experience on the particular type of simulator being used.

5 Any person responsible for the supervision of in-service training of a seafarer intended to be used in qualifying for certification under the Convention shall have a full understanding of the training programme and the specific objectives for each type of training being conducted.

### **Assessment of competence**

6 Any person conducting in-service assessment of competence of a seafarer, either on board or ashore, which is intended to be used in qualifying for certification under the Convention, shall:

- .1 have an appropriate level of knowledge and understanding of the competence to be assessed;

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

- .2 be qualified in the task for which the assessment is being made;
- .3 have received appropriate guidance in assessment methods and practice;
- .4 have gained practical assessment experience; and
- .5 if conducting assessment involving the use of simulators, have gained practical assessment experience on the particular type of simulator under the supervision and to the satisfaction of an experienced assessor.

### **Training and assessment within an institution**

7 Each Party which recognizes a course of training, a training institution, or a qualification granted by a training institution, as part of its requirements for the issue of a certificate required under the Convention, shall ensure that the qualifications and experience of instructors and assessors are covered in the application of the quality standard provisions of section A-I/8. Such qualification, experience and application of quality standards shall incorporate appropriate training in instructional techniques, and training and assessment methods and practice, and shall comply with all applicable requirements of paragraphs 4 to 6.

### **Section A-I/7**

#### *Communication of information*

1 The information required by regulation I/7, paragraph 1 shall be communicated to the Secretary-General in the formats prescribed in the paragraphs hereunder.

### **PART 1 – INITIAL COMMUNICATION OF INFORMATION**

2 Within one calendar year of entry into force of regulation I/7, each Party shall report on the steps it has taken to give the Convention full and complete effect, which report shall include the following:

- .1 contact details and organization chart of the ministry, department or governmental agency responsible for administering the Convention;
- .2 a concise explanation of the legal and administrative measures provided and taken to ensure compliance, particularly with regulations I/6 and I/9;
- .3 a clear statement of the education, training, examination, competency assessment and certification policies adopted;
- .4 a concise summary of the courses, training programmes, examinations and assessments provided for each certificate issued pursuant to the Convention;
- .5 a concise outline of the procedures followed to authorize, accredit or approve training and examinations, medical fitness and competency assessments required by the Convention, the conditions attaching thereto, and a list of the authorizations, accreditations and approvals granted;
- .6 a concise summary of the procedures followed in granting any dispensation under article VIII of the Convention; and

- .7 the results of the comparison carried out pursuant to regulation I/11 and a concise outline of the refresher and upgrading training mandated.

## **PART 2 – SUBSEQUENT REPORTS**

3 Each Party shall, within six months of:

- .1 retaining or adopting any equivalent education or training arrangements pursuant to article IX, provide a full description of such arrangements;
- .2 recognizing certificates issued by another Party, provide a report summarizing the measures taken to ensure compliance with regulation I/10; and
- .3 authorizing the employment of seafarers holding alternative certificates issued under regulation VII/1 on ships entitled to fly its flag, provide the Secretary-General with a specimen copy of the type of safe manning documents issued to such ships.

4 Each Party shall report the results of each evaluation carried out pursuant to regulation I/8, paragraph 2 within six months of its completion. The report of the evaluation shall include the following information:

- .1 the qualifications and experience of those who conducted the evaluation; (e.g., certificates of competency held, experience as a seafarer and independent evaluator, experience in the field of maritime training and assessment, experience in the administration of certification systems, or any other relevant qualifications/experience);
- .2 the terms of reference for the independent evaluation and those of the evaluators;
- .3 a list of training institutions/centres covered by the independent evaluation; and
- .4 the results of the independent evaluation, including:
  - .1 verification that:
    - .1.1 all applicable provisions of the Convention and STCW Code, including their amendments, are covered by the Party's quality standards system in accordance with section A-I/8, paragraph 3.1; and
    - .1.2 all internal management control and monitoring measures and follow-up actions comply with planned arrangements and documented procedures and are effective in ensuring achievement of defined objectives in accordance with section A-I/8, paragraph 3.2;
  - .2 a brief description of:
    - .2.1 the non-conformities found, if any, during the independent evaluation,
    - .2.2 the corrective measures recommended to address the identified non-conformities, and

- .2.3 the corrective measures carried out to address the identified non-conformities.

[The report is made available by the Organization to the Parties upon request.]

5 Parties shall report the steps taken to implement any subsequent mandatory amendments to the Convention and STCW Code, not previously included in the report on the initial communication of information pursuant to regulation I/7 or any previous report pursuant to regulation I/8. The information shall be included in the next report pursuant to regulation I/8, paragraph 3, following the entry into force of the amendment.

6 The information on the steps taken to implement mandatory amendments to the Convention and STCW Code shall include the following, where applicable:

- .1 a concise explanation of the legal and administrative measures provided and taken to ensure compliance with the amendment;
- .2 a concise summary of any courses, training programmes, examinations and assessments provided to comply with the amendment;
- .3 a concise outline of the procedures followed to authorize, accredit or approve training and examinations, medical fitness and competency assessments required under the amendment;
- .4 a concise outline of any refresher training and upgrading training required to meet the amendments; and
- .5 a comparison between the measures to implement the amendment and existing measures contained in previous reports pursuant to regulation I/7, paragraph 1 and/or regulation I/8, paragraph 2 where applicable.

### **PART 3 – PANEL OF COMPETENT PERSONS**

7 The Secretary-General shall maintain a list of competent persons approved by the Maritime Safety Committee, including competent persons made available or recommended by the Parties, who may be called upon to evaluate the reports submitted pursuant to regulation I/7 and regulation I/8 and may be called to assist in the preparation of the report required by regulation I/7, paragraph 2. These persons shall ordinarily be available during relevant sessions of the Maritime Safety Committee or its subsidiary bodies, but need not conduct their work solely during such sessions.

8 In relation to regulation I/7, paragraph 2, the competent persons shall be knowledgeable of the requirements of the Convention and at least one of them shall have knowledge of the system of training and certification of the Party concerned.

9 When a report is received from any Party under regulation I/8, paragraph 3, the Secretary-General will designate competent persons from the list maintained in accordance with paragraph 7, to consider the report and provide their views on whether:

- .1 the report is complete and demonstrates that the Party has carried out an independent evaluation of the knowledge, understanding, skills and competence

acquisition and assessment activities, and of the administration of the certification system (including endorsement and revalidation), in accordance with section A-I/8, paragraph 3;

.2 the report is sufficient to demonstrate that:

.2.1 the evaluators were qualified,

.2.2 the terms of reference were clear enough to ensure that:

.2.2.1 all applicable provisions of the Convention and STCW Code, including their amendments, are covered by the Party's quality standards system; and

.2.2.2 the implementation of clearly defined objectives in accordance with regulation I/8, paragraph 1 could be verified over the full range of relevant activities,

.2.3 the procedures followed during the independent evaluation were appropriate to identify any significant non-conformities in the Party's system of training, assessment of competence, and certification of seafarers, as may be applicable to the Party concerned, and

.2.4 the actions being taken to correct any noted non-conformities are timely and appropriate.\*

10 Any meeting of the competent persons shall:

.1 be held at the discretion of the Secretary-General;

.2 be comprised of an odd number of members, ordinarily not to exceed five persons;

.3 appoint its own chairman; and

.4 provide the Secretary-General with the agreed opinion of its members, or if no agreement is reached, with both the majority and minority views.

11 The competent persons shall, on a confidential basis, express their views in writing on:

.1 a comparison of the facts reported in the information communicated to the Secretary-General by the Party with all relevant requirements of the Convention;

.2 the report of any relevant evaluation submitted under regulation I/8, paragraph 3;

.3 the report of any steps taken to implement the amendments to the STCW Convention and Code submitted under paragraph 5; and

.4 any additional information provided by the Party.

---

\* *Corrective actions must be timely and appropriate* means those actions must be focused on the underpinning/root causes of deficiencies and must be arranged to take place in a prescribed time schedule.

## **PART 4 – REPORT TO THE MARITIME SAFETY COMMITTEE**

**12** In preparing the report to the Maritime Safety Committee required by regulation I/7, paragraph 2, the Secretary-General shall:

- .1 solicit and take into account the views expressed by competent persons selected from the list established pursuant to paragraph 7;
- .2 seek clarification, when necessary, from the Party of any matter related to the information provided under regulation I/7, paragraph 1; and
- .3 identify any area in which the Party may have requested assistance to implement the Convention.

**13** The Party concerned shall be informed of the arrangements for the meetings of competent persons, and its representatives shall be entitled to be present to clarify any matter related to the information provided pursuant to regulation I/7, paragraph 1.

**14** If the Secretary-General is not in a position to submit the report called for by paragraph 2 of regulation I/7, the Party concerned may request the Maritime Safety Committee to take the action contemplated by paragraph 3 of regulation I/7, taking into account the information submitted pursuant to this section and the views expressed in accordance with paragraphs **10 and 11.**

### **Section A-I/8**

#### *Quality standards*

#### **National objectives and quality standards**

1 Each Party shall ensure that the education and training objectives and related standards of competence to be achieved are clearly defined and identify the levels of knowledge, understanding and skills appropriate to the examinations and assessments required under the Convention. The objectives and related quality standards may be specified separately for different courses and training programmes and shall cover the administration of the certification system.

2 The field of application of the quality standards shall cover the administration of the certification system, all training courses and programmes, examinations and assessments carried out by or under the authority of a Party and the qualifications and experience required of instructors and assessors, having regard to the policies, systems, controls and internal quality assurance reviews established to ensure achievement of the defined objectives.

3 Each Party shall ensure that an independent evaluation of the knowledge, understanding, skills and competence acquisition and assessment activities, and of the administration of the certification system, is conducted at intervals of not more than five years in order to verify that:

- .1** all applicable provisions of the Convention and STCW Code, including their amendments, are covered by the quality standards system;
- .2** all internal management control and monitoring measures and follow-up actions comply with planned arrangements and documented procedures and are effective in ensuring achievement of the defined objectives;

- .3 the results of each independent evaluation are documented and brought to the attention of those responsible for the area evaluated; and
- .4 timely action is taken to correct deficiencies.

## Section A-I/9

### *Medical standards*

1 Parties, when establishing standards of medical fitness for seafarers as required by regulation I/9, shall take into account the minimum in-service eyesight standards set out in table A-I/9-1, the minimum physical abilities set out in table [A-I/9-2] and the guidance given in section B-I/9 of this Code, bearing in mind the different duties of seafarers. These standards may differentiate between those persons seeking to start a career at sea and those seafarers already serving at sea. In the former case, for example, it might be appropriate to designate higher standards in certain areas, while for seafarers already serving at sea some reduction may be made. These standards shall also take into account the need to screen for any impairment or disease that will limit the ability of the seafarer to effectively perform his/her duties during the validity period of the medical certificate.

2 Medical fitness examinations of seafarers shall be conducted by appropriately qualified and experienced medical practitioners recognized by the Party.

3 Each Party shall establish provisions for recognizing medical practitioners. A register of recognized medical practitioners shall be maintained by the Party and made available to other Parties, companies and seafarers on request.

4 Each Party shall provide guidance for the conduct of medical fitness examinations and issuing of medical certificates, taking into account provisions set out in section B-I/9 of this Code. Each Party shall determine the amount of discretion given to recognized medical practitioners on the application of the medical standards, bearing in mind the different duties of seafarers, except that there shall not be discretion with respect to the minimum eyesight standards for distance vision aided, near/immediate vision and colour vision in table A-I/9-1.

5 Each Party shall establish processes and procedures to enable seafarers who, after examination, do not meet the medical fitness standards or have had a limitation imposed on their ability to work, in particular with respect to time, field of work or trading area, to have their case reviewed in line with that Party's provisions for appeal.

6 The medical certificate provided for in regulation I/9, paragraph 3 shall include the following information as a minimum:

**.1 Authorizing authority** and the requirements under which the document is issued

**.2 Seafarer information**

.2.1 Name: (*Last, first, middle*)

.2.2 Date of birth: (*day/month/year*)

.2.3 Gender: *(Male/Female)*

.2.4 Nationality

**.3 Declaration of the recognized medical practitioner**

.3.1 Confirmation that identification documents were checked at the point of examination: *Y/N*

.3.2 Hearing meets the standards in STCW A-I/9: *Y/N*

.3.3 Unaided hearing satisfactory? *Y/N*

.3.4 Visual acuity meets standards in STCW A-I/9? *Y/N*

.3.5 Colour vision\* meets standards in STCW A-I/9? *Y/N*

.3.5.1 Date of last colour vision test.

.3.6 Fit for look-out duties? *Y/N*

.3.7 No limitations or restrictions on fitness? *Y/N*  
If “N”, specify limitations or restrictions.

.3.8 Is the seafarer free from any medical condition likely to be aggravated by service at sea or to render the seafarer unfit for such service or to endanger the health of other persons on board?: *Y/N*

.3.9 Date of examination: *(day/month/year)*

.3.10 Expiry date of certificate: *(day/month/year)*

**.4 Details of the issuing authority**

.4.1 Official stamp (including name) of the issuing authority

.4.2 Signature of the authorized person

**.5 Seafarer’s signature** – *confirming that the seafarer has been informed of the content of the certificate and of the right to a review in accordance with paragraph 5 of section A-I/9*

7 Medical certificates shall be in the official language of the issuing country. If the language used is not English, the text shall include a translation into that language.

---

\* Note: Colour vision assessment only needs to be conducted every six years.

**Table A-I/9-1**  
**Minimum in-service eyesight standards for seafarers**

STCW Convention regulation	Category of seafarer	Distance vision Aided <sup>1</sup>		Near/immediate vision Both eyes together, aided or unaided	Colour vision <sup>3</sup>	Visual fields <sup>4</sup>	Night blindness <sup>4</sup>	Diplopia (double vision) <sup>4</sup>
		One eye	Other eye					
I/11 II/1 II/2 II/3 II/4 II/5 VII/2	Masters, deck officers and ratings required to undertake look-out duties	0.5 <sup>2</sup>	0.5	Vision required for ship's navigation (e.g., chart and nautical publication reference, use of bridge instrumentation and equipment, and identification of aids to navigation)	See Note 5	Normal Visual fields	Vision required to perform all necessary functions in darkness without compromise	No significant condition evident
I/11 III/1 III/2 III/3 III/4 III/5 III/6 III/7 VII/2	All engineer officers, electro-technical officers, electro-technical ratings and ratings forming part of an engine-room watch	0.4	0.4	Vision required to read instruments in close proximity, to operate equipment, and to identify systems/components as necessary	See Note 6	Sufficient visual fields	Vision required to perform all necessary functions in darkness without compromise	No significant condition evident
I/11 IV/2	GMDSS Radio operators	0.4	0.4	Vision required to read instruments in close proximity, to operate equipment, and to identify systems/components as necessary	See Note 6	Sufficient visual fields	Vision required to perform all necessary functions in darkness without compromise	No significant condition evident

**Notes:**

- <sup>1</sup> Values given in Snellen decimal notation.
- <sup>2</sup> A value of at least 0.7 in one eye is recommended to reduce the risk of undetected underlying eye disease.
- <sup>3</sup> As defined in the *International Recommendations for Colour Vision Requirements for Transport* by the Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE-143-2001).
- <sup>4</sup> Subject to assessment by a clinical vision specialist where indicated by initial examination findings.
- <sup>5</sup> CIE colour vision standard 1 or 2.
- <sup>6</sup> CIE colour vision standard 1, 2 or 3.

[Table A-I/9-2

**Assessment of minimum entry level and in-service physical abilities for seafarers<sup>3</sup>**

<b>Shipboard task, function event or condition<sup>3</sup></b>	<b>Related physical ability</b>	<b>A medical examiner should be satisfied that the candidate<sup>4</sup></b>
Routine movement around vessel: - on moving deck - between levels - between compartments  <i>Note 1 applies to this row</i>	Maintain balance and move with agility Climb up and down vertical ladders and stairways Step over coamings (e.g., 600 mm high) Open and close watertight doors	Has no disturbance in sense of balance. Does not have any impairment or disease that prevents relevant movements and physical activities.  Is, without assistance <sup>5</sup> , able to: - climb vertical ladders and stairways - step over high sills - manipulate door closing systems
Routine tasks on board: - Use of hand tools - Movement of ship's stores - Overhead work - Valve operation - Standing a four hour watch - Working in confined spaces - Responding to alarms, warnings and instructions - Verbal communication  <i>Note 1 applies to this row</i>	Strength, dexterity and stamina to manipulate mechanical devices Lift, pull and carry a load (e.g., 18 kg) Reach upwards Stand, walk and remain alert for an extended period  Work in constricted spaces and move through restricted openings (e.g., 600 mm × 600 mm) Visually distinguish objects, shapes and signals Hear warnings and instructions Give a clear spoken description	Does not have a defined impairment or diagnosed medical condition that reduces ability to perform routine duties essential to the safe operation of the vessel  Has ability to - work with arms raised - stand and walk for an extended period - enter confined space - fulfil eyesight standards (A-I/9-1) - fulfil hearing standards set by competent authority or take account of international guidelines - hold normal conversation
Emergency duties <sup>6</sup> on board: - Escape - Fire-fighting - Evacuation  <i>Note 2 applies to this row</i>	Don a lifejacket or immersion suit Escape from smoke-filled spaces  Take part in fire-fighting duties, including use of breathing apparatus Take part in vessel evacuation procedures	Does not have a defined impairment or diagnosed medical condition that reduces ability to perform emergency duties essential to the safe operation of the vessel  Has ability to: - don lifejacket or immersion suit - crawl - feel for differences in temperature - handle fire-fighting equipment - wear breathing apparatus (where required as part of duties)

**Notes:**

- 1 Rows 1 and 2 of the above table describe (a) ordinary shipboard tasks, functions, events and conditions, (b) the corresponding physical abilities which may be considered necessary for the safety of a seafarer, other crew members and the ship, and (c) high-level criteria for use by medical practitioners assessing medical fitness, bearing in mind the different duties of seafarers and the nature of shipboard work for which they will be employed.
- 2 Row 3 of the above table describes (a) ordinary shipboard tasks, functions, events and conditions, (b) the corresponding physical abilities which shall be considered necessary for the safety of a seafarer, other crew members and the ship, and (c) high-level criteria for use by medical practitioners assessing medical fitness, bearing in mind the different duties of seafarers in the nature of shipboard work for which they will be employed.
- 3 This table is not intended to address all possible shipboard conditions or potentially disqualifying medical conditions. Parties shall specify physical abilities applicable to the category of seafarers (such as “Deck officer” and “Engine rating”). The special circumstances of individuals and for those who have specialized or limited duties should receive due consideration.
- 4 If in doubt, the medical practitioner should quantify the degree or severity of any relevant impairment by means of objective tests, whenever appropriate tests are available, or by referring the candidate for further assessment.
- 5 The term “assistance” means the use of another person to accomplish the task.
- 6 The term “emergency duties” is used to cover all standard emergency response situations such as abandon ship or fire fighting as well as the procedures to be followed by each seafarer to secure personal survival.]

## **Section A-I/10**

### *Recognition of certificates*

1 The provisions of regulation I/10, paragraph 4 regarding the non-recognition of certificates issued by a non-Party shall not be construed as preventing a Party, when issuing its own certificate, from accepting seagoing service, education and training acquired under the authority of a non-Party, provided the Party complies with regulation I/2 in issuing each such certificate and ensures that the requirements of the Convention relating to seagoing service, education, training and competence are complied with.

2 Where an Administration which has recognized a certificate withdraws its endorsement of recognition for disciplinary reasons, the Administration shall inform the Party that issued the certificate of the circumstances.

## **Section A-I/11**

### *Revalidation of certificates*

#### **Professional competence**

1 Continued professional competence as required under regulation I/11 shall be established by:

.1 approved seagoing service, performing functions appropriate to the certificate held, for a period of at least:

.1.1 12 months in total during the preceding five years, or

.1.2 three months in total during the preceding six months immediately prior to revalidating; or

.2 having performed functions considered to be equivalent to the seagoing service required in paragraph 1.1; or

.3 passing an approved test; or

.4 successfully completing an approved training course or courses; or

.5 having completed approved seagoing service, performing functions appropriate to the certificate held, for a period of not less than three months in a supernumerary capacity, or in a lower officer rank than that for which the certificate held is valid immediately prior to taking up the rank for which it is valid.

2 The refresher and updating courses required by regulation I/11 shall be approved and include changes in relevant national and international regulations concerning the safety of life at sea and the protection of the marine environment and take account of any updating of the standard of competence concerned.

3 Continued professional competence for tankers as required under regulation I/11, paragraph 3 shall be established by:

- .1 approved seagoing service, performing duties appropriate to the certificate held, for a period of at least 3 months in total during the preceding 5 years; or
- .2 successfully completing an approved relevant training course or courses.

## **Section A-I/12**

*Standards governing the use of simulators*

### **PART 1 – PERFORMANCE STANDARDS**

#### **General performance standards for simulators used in training**

- 1 Each Party shall ensure that any simulator used for mandatory simulator-based training shall:
  - .1 be suitable for the selected objectives and training tasks;
  - .2 be capable of simulating the operating capabilities of shipboard equipment concerned, to a level of physical realism appropriate to training objectives, and include the capabilities, limitations and possible errors of such equipment;
  - .3 have sufficient behavioural realism to allow a trainee to acquire the skills appropriate to the training objectives;
  - .4 provide a controlled operating environment, capable of producing a variety of conditions, which may include emergency, hazardous or unusual situations relevant to the training objectives;
  - .5 provide an interface through which a trainee can interact with the equipment, the simulated environment and, as appropriate, the instructor; and
  - .6 permit an instructor to control, monitor and record exercises for the effective debriefing of trainees.

#### **General performance standards for simulators used in assessment of competence**

- 2 Each Party shall ensure that any simulator used for the assessment of competence required under the Convention or for any demonstration of continued proficiency so required shall:
  - .1 be capable of satisfying the specified assessment objectives;
  - .2 be capable of simulating the operational capabilities of the shipboard equipment concerned to a level of physical realism appropriate to the assessment objectives, and include the capabilities, limitations and possible errors of such equipment;
  - .3 have sufficient behavioural realism to allow a candidate to exhibit the skills appropriate to the assessment objectives;

- .4 provide an interface through which a candidate can interact with the equipment and simulated environment;
- .5 provide a controlled operating environment, capable of producing a variety of conditions, which may include emergency, hazardous or unusual situations relevant to assessment objectives; and
- .6 permit an assessor to control, monitor and record exercises for the effective assessment of the performance of candidates.

### **Additional performance standards**

3 In addition to meeting the basic requirements set out in paragraphs 1 and 2, simulation equipment to which this section applies shall meet the performance standards given hereunder in accordance with their specific type.

#### *Radar simulation*

4 Radar simulation equipment shall be capable of simulating the operational capabilities of navigational radar equipment which meets all applicable performance standards adopted by the Organization\* and incorporate facilities to:

- .1 operate in the stabilized relative-motion mode and sea- and ground-stabilized true-motion modes;
- .2 model weather, tidal streams, current, shadow sectors, spurious echoes and other propagation effects, and generate coastlines, navigational buoys and search and rescue transponders; and
- .3 create a real-time operating environment incorporating at least two own-ship stations with ability to change own ship's course and speed, and include parameters for at least 20 target ships and appropriate communication facilities.

#### *Automatic Radar Plotting Aid (ARPA) simulation*

5 ARPA simulation equipment shall be capable of simulating the operational capabilities of ARPAs which meet all applicable performance standards adopted by the Organization\*, and shall incorporate the facilities for:

- .1 manual and automatic target acquisition;
- .2 past track information;
- .3 use of exclusion areas;
- .4 vector/graphic time-scale and data display; and
- .5 trial manoeuvres.

---

\* See relevant/appropriate performance standards adopted by the Organization and set out in IMO publication "Performance standards for shipborne radiocommunications and navigational equipment".

## **PART 2 – OTHER PROVISIONS**

### **Simulator training objectives**

6 Each Party shall ensure that the aims and objectives of simulator-based training are defined within an overall training programme and that specific training objectives and tasks are selected so as to relate as closely as possible to shipboard tasks and practices.

### **Training procedures**

- 7 In conducting mandatory simulator-based training, instructors shall ensure that:
- .1 trainees are adequately briefed beforehand on the exercise objectives and tasks and are given sufficient planning time before the exercise starts;
  - .2 trainees have adequate familiarization time on the simulator and with its equipment before any training or assessment exercise commences;
  - .3 guidance given and exercise stimuli are appropriate to the selected exercise objectives and tasks and to the level of trainee experience;
  - .4 exercises are effectively monitored, supported as appropriate by audio and visual observation of trainee activity and pre- and post-exercise evaluation reports;
  - .5 trainees are effectively debriefed to ensure that training objectives have been met and that operational skills demonstrated are of an acceptable standard;
  - .6 the use of peer assessment during debriefing is encouraged; and
  - .7 simulator exercises are designed and tested so as to ensure their suitability for the specified training objectives.

### **Assessment procedures**

- 8 Where simulators are used to assess the ability of candidates to demonstrate levels of competency, assessors shall ensure that:
- .1 performance criteria are identified clearly and explicitly and are valid and available to the candidates;
  - .2 assessment criteria are established clearly and are explicit to ensure reliability and uniformity of assessment and to optimize objective measurement and evaluation, so that subjective judgements are kept to the minimum;
  - .3 candidates are briefed clearly on the tasks and/or skills to be assessed and on the tasks and performance criteria by which their competency will be determined;
  - .4 assessment of performance takes into account normal operating procedures and any behavioural interaction with other candidates on the simulator or with simulator staff;

- .5 scoring or grading methods to assess performance are used with caution until they have been validated; and
- .6 the prime criterion is that a candidate demonstrates the ability to carry out a task safely and effectively to the satisfaction of the assessor.

### **Qualifications of instructors and assessors\***

9 Each Party shall ensure that instructors and assessors are appropriately qualified and experienced for the particular types and levels of training and corresponding assessment of competence as specified in regulation I/6 and section A-I/6.

#### **Section A-I/13**

##### *Conduct of trials*

(No provisions)

#### **Section A-I/14**

##### *Responsibilities of companies*

1 Companies, masters and crew members each have responsibility for ensuring that the obligations set out in this section are given full and complete effect and that such other measures as may be necessary are taken to ensure that each crew member can make a knowledgeable and informed contribution to the safe operation of the ship.

2 The company shall provide written instructions to the master of each ship to which the Convention applies, setting forth the policies and the procedures to be followed to ensure that all seafarers who are newly employed on board the ship are given a reasonable opportunity to become familiar with the shipboard equipment, operating procedures and other arrangements needed for the proper performance of their duties, before being assigned to those duties. Such policies and procedures shall include:

- .1 allocation of a reasonable period of time during which each newly employed seafarer will have an opportunity to become acquainted with:
  - .1.1 the specific equipment the seafarer will be using or operating, and
  - .1.2 ship-specific watchkeeping, safety, environmental protection and emergency procedures and arrangements the seafarer needs to know to perform the assigned duties properly; and
- .2 designation of a knowledgeable crew member who will be responsible for ensuring that an opportunity is provided to each newly employed seafarer to receive essential information in a language the seafarer understands.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) and resolution MSC.64(67) on “*Recommendations on new and amended performance standards*” may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

3 Companies shall ensure that masters, officers and other personnel assigned specific duties and responsibilities on board their ro-ro passenger ships shall have completed familiarization training to attain the abilities that are appropriate to the capacity to be filled and duties and responsibilities to be taken up, taking into account the guidance given in section B-I/14 of this Code.

**Section A-I/15**

*Transitional provisions*

(No provisions)

## CHAPTER II

### Standards regarding the master and deck department

#### Section A-II/1

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of officers in charge of a navigational watch on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more*

#### Standard of competence

- 1 Every candidate for certification shall:
  - .1 be required to demonstrate the competence to undertake, at operational level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-II/1;
  - .2 at least hold **the** appropriate certificate for performing VHF radiocommunications in accordance with the requirements of the Radio Regulations; and
  - .3 if designated to have primary responsibility for radiocommunications during distress incidents, hold **the** appropriate certificate issued or recognized under the provisions of the Radio Regulations.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-II/1.
- 3 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-II/1 shall be sufficient for officers of the watch to carry out their watchkeeping duties.\*
- 4 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall be based on section A-VIII/2, part 4-1 – Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch – and shall also take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.
- 5 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-II/1.

#### Onboard training

- 6 Every candidate for certification as officer in charge of a navigational watch of ships of 500 gross tonnage or more whose seagoing service, in accordance with paragraph 2.2 of regulation II/1, forms part of a training programme approved as meeting the requirements of this section shall follow an approved programme of onboard training which:
  - .1 ensures that, during the required period of seagoing service, the candidate receives systematic practical training and experience in the tasks, duties and

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

responsibilities of an officer in charge of a navigational watch, taking into account the guidance given in section B-II/1 of this Code;

- .2 is closely supervised and monitored by qualified officers aboard the ships in which the approved seagoing service is performed; and
- .3 is adequately documented in a training record book or similar document.\*

### **Near-coastal voyages**

7 The following subjects may be omitted from those listed in column 2 of table A-II/1 for issue of restricted certificates for service on near-coastal voyages, bearing in mind the safety of all ships which may be operating in the same waters:

- .1 celestial navigation; and
- .2 those electronic systems of position fixing and navigation that do not cover the waters for which the certificate is to be valid.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) and a similar document produced by the International Shipping Federation may be of assistance in the preparation of training record books.

*Table A-II/1*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for officers in charge of a  
 navigational watch on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more**

**Function:     Navigation at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Plan and conduct a passage and determine position	<p><i>Celestial navigation</i></p> <p>Ability to use celestial bodies to determine the ship's position</p> <p><i>Terrestrial and coastal navigation</i></p> <p>Ability to determine the ship's position by use of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 landmarks</li> <li>.2 aids to navigation, including lighthouses, beacons and buoys</li> <li>.3 dead reckoning, taking into account winds, tides, currents and estimated speed</li> </ul> <p>Thorough knowledge of and ability to use <b>nautical</b> charts, and publications, such as sailing directions, tide tables, notices to mariners, radio navigational warnings and ships' routeing information</p> <p><i>Electronic systems of position fixing and navigation</i></p> <p>Ability to determine the ship's position by use of electronic navigational aids</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul> <p>using chart catalogues, charts, <b>nautical</b> publications, radio navigational warnings, sextant, azimuth mirror, electronic navigation equipment, echo-sounding equipment, compass</p>	<p>The information obtained from <b>nautical</b> charts and publications is relevant, interpreted correctly and properly applied. All potential navigational hazards are accurately identified</p> <p>The primary method of fixing the ship's position is the most appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>The position is determined within the limits of acceptable instrument/system errors</p> <p>The reliability of the information obtained from the primary method of position fixing is checked at appropriate intervals</p> <p>Calculations and measurements of navigational information are accurate</p> <p>The charts selected are the largest scale suitable for the area of navigation and charts and publications are corrected in accordance with the latest information available</p> <p>Performance checks and tests to navigation systems comply with manufacturer's recommendations and good navigational practice</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Plan and conduct a passage and determine position (continued)</p>	<p><i>Echo-sounders</i></p> <p>Ability to operate the equipment and apply the information correctly</p> <p><i>Compass – magnetic and gyro</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the principles of magnetic and gyro-compasses</p> <p>Ability to determine errors of the magnetic and gyro-compasses, using celestial and terrestrial means, and to allow for such errors</p> <p><i>Steering control system</i></p> <p>Knowledge of steering control systems, operational procedures and change-over from manual to automatic control and vice versa. Adjustment of controls for optimum performance</p> <p><i>Meteorology</i></p> <p>Ability to use and interpret information obtained from shipborne meteorological instruments</p> <p>Knowledge of the characteristics of the various weather systems, reporting procedures and recording systems</p> <p>Ability to apply the meteorological information available</p>		<p>Errors in magnetic and gyro-compasses are determined and correctly applied to courses and bearings</p> <p>The selection of the mode of steering is the most suitable for the prevailing weather, sea and traffic conditions and intended manoeuvres</p> <p>Measurements and observations of weather conditions are accurate and appropriate to the passage</p> <p>Meteorological information is correctly interpreted and applied</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain a safe navigational watch	<p><i>Watchkeeping</i></p> <p>Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</p> <p>Thorough knowledge of the Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch</p> <p>The use of routing in accordance with the General Provisions on Ships' Routeing</p> <p>The use of information from navigational equipment for maintaining a safe navigational watch</p> <p>Knowledge of blind pilotage techniques</p> <p>The use of reporting in accordance with the General Principles for Ship Reporting Systems and with VTS procedures</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience;</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>The conduct, handover and relief of the watch conforms with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>A proper look-out is maintained at all times and in such a way as to conform to accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>Lights, shapes and sound signals conform with the requirements contained in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 and are correctly recognized</p> <p>The frequency and extent of monitoring of traffic, the ship and the environment conform with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>A proper record is maintained of the movements and activities relating to the navigation of the ship</p> <p>Responsibility for the safety of navigation is clearly defined at all times, including periods when the master is on the bridge and while under pilotage</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Maintain a safe navigational watch (continued)</p>	<p><i>Bridge resource management</i></p> <p>Knowledge of bridge resource management principles, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication</li> <li>.3 assertiveness and leadership</li> <li>.4 obtaining and maintaining situational awareness</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training</li> <li>.2 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> </ul>	<p>Resources are allocated and assigned as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p> <p>Questionable decisions and/or actions result in appropriate challenge and response</p> <p>Effective leadership behaviours are identified</p> <p>Team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted vessel state, navigation path, and external environment</p>
<p>Use of radar and ARPA to maintain safety of navigation</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Training and assessment in the use of ARPA is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ARPA. This limitation shall be reflected in the endorsement issued to the seafarer concerned</p>	<p><i>Radar navigation</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the fundamentals of radar and automatic radar plotting aids (ARPA)</p> <p>Ability to operate and to interpret and analyse information obtained from radar, including the following:</p> <p>Performance, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 factors affecting performance and accuracy</li> <li>.2 setting up and maintaining displays</li> <li>.3 detection of misrepresentation of information, false echoes, sea return, etc., racons and SARTs</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved radar simulator and ARPA simulator training plus in-service experience</p>	<p>Information obtained from radar and ARPA is correctly interpreted and analysed, taking into account the limitations of the equipment and prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Use of radar and ARPA to maintain safety of navigation <i>(continued)</i>	Use, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 range and bearing; course and speed of other ships; time and distance of closest approach of crossing, meeting overtaking ships</li> <li>.2 identification of critical echoes; detecting course and speed changes of other ships; effect of changes in own ship's course or speed or both</li> <li>.3 application of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</li> <li>.4 plotting techniques and relative- and true-motion concepts</li> <li>.5 parallel indexing</li> </ul>		Action taken to avoid a close encounter or collision with other vessels is in accordance with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972  Decisions to amend course and/or speed are both timely and in accordance with accepted navigation practice  Adjustments made to the ship's course and speed maintain safety of navigation  Communication is clear, concise and acknowledged at all times in a seamanlike manner  Manoeuvring signals are made at the appropriate time and are in accordance with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Use of radar and ARPA to maintain safety of navigation (<i>continued</i>)</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Training and assessment in the use of ARPA is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ARPA. This limitation shall be reflected in the endorsement issued to the seafarer concerned</p>	<p>Principal types of ARPA, their display characteristics, performance standards and the dangers of over-reliance on ARPA</p> <p>Ability to operate and to interpret and analyse information obtained from ARPA, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 system performance and accuracy, tracking capabilities and limitations, and processing delays</li> <li>.2 use of operational warnings and system tests</li> <li>.3 methods of target acquisition and their limitations</li> <li>.4 true and relative vectors, graphic representation of target information and danger areas</li> <li>.5 deriving and analysing information, critical echoes, exclusion areas and trial manoeuvres</li> </ol>		
<p>Use of ECDIS to maintain the safety of navigation</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Training and assessment in the use of ECDIS is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ECDIS</p>	<p><i>Navigation using ECDIS</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the capability and limitations of ECDIS operations, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 a thorough understanding of Electronic Navigational Chart (ENC) data, data accuracy, presentation rules, display options and other chart data formats</li> <li>.2 the dangers of over-reliance</li> </ol>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.2 approved ECDIS simulator training</li> </ol>	<p>Monitors information on ECDIS in a manner that contributes to safe navigation</p> <p>Information obtained from ECDIS (including radar overlay and/or radar tracking functions, when fitted) is correctly interpreted and analysed, taking into account the limitations of the equipment, all connected sensors (including radar and AIS where interfaced), and prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>These limitations shall be reflected in the endorsements issued to the seafarer concerned</p>	<p>.3 familiarity with the functions of ECDIS required by performance standards in force</p> <p>Proficiency in operation, interpretation, and analysis of information obtained from ECDIS, including:</p> <p>.1 use of functions that are integrated with other navigation systems in various installations, including proper functioning and adjustment to desired settings</p> <p>.2 safe monitoring and adjustment of information, including own position, sea area display, mode and orientation, chart data displayed, route monitoring, user-created information layers, contacts (when interfaced with AIS and/or radar tracking) and radar overlay functions (when interfaced)</p> <p>.3 confirmation of vessel position by alternative means</p> <p>.4 efficient use of settings to ensure conformance to operational procedures, including alarm parameters for anti-grounding, proximity to contacts and special areas, completeness of chart data and chart update status, and backup arrangements</p>		<p>Safety of navigation is maintained through adjustments made to the ship's course and speed through ECDIS-controlled track-keeping functions (when fitted)</p> <p>Communication is clear, concise and acknowledged at all times in a seamanlike manner</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Use of ECDIS to maintain the safety of navigation (continued)	.5 adjustment of settings and values to suit the present conditions  .6 situational awareness while using ECDIS including safe water and proximity of hazards, set and drift, chart data and scale selection, suitability of route, contact detection and management, and integrity of sensors		
Respond to emergencies	<i>Emergency procedures</i>  Precautions for the protection and safety of passengers in emergency situations  Initial action to be taken following a collision or a grounding; initial damage assessment and control  Appreciation of the procedures to be followed for rescuing persons from the sea, assisting a ship in distress, responding to emergencies which arise in port	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience .2 approved training ship experience .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate .4 practical training	The type and scale of the emergency is promptly identified  Initial actions and, if appropriate, manoeuvring of the ship are in accordance with contingency plans and are appropriate to the urgency of the situation and nature of the emergency
Respond to a distress signal at sea	<i>Search and rescue</i>  Knowledge of the contents of the International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue (IAMSAR) Manual	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction or approved simulator training, where appropriate	The distress or emergency signal is immediately recognized  Contingency plans and instructions in standing orders are implemented and complied with
Use the IMO Standard Marine Communication Phrases and use English in written and oral form	<i>English language</i>  Adequate knowledge of the English language to enable the officer to use charts and other nautical publications, to understand meteorological information and messages concerning ship's safety and	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction	English language nautical publications and messages relevant to the safety of the ship are correctly interpreted or drafted  Communications are clear and understood

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
	operation, to communicate with other ships, coast stations and VTS centres and to perform the officer's duties also with a multilingual crew, including the ability to use and understand the IMO Standard Marine Communication Phrases (IMO SMCP)		
Transmit and receive information by visual signalling	<i>Visual signalling</i> Ability to use the International Code of Signals Ability to transmit and receive, by Morse light, distress signal SOS as specified in Annex IV of COLREG 1972 and appendix 1 of the International Code of Signals, and visual signalling of single-letter signals as also specified in the International Code of Signals	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction and/or simulation	Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful
Manoeuvre the ship	<i>Ship manoeuvring and handling</i> Knowledge of:  .1 the effects of deadweight, draught, trim, speed and under-keel clearance on turning circles and stopping distances  .2 the effects of wind and current on ship handling  .3 manoeuvres and procedures for the rescue of person overboard  .4 squat, shallow-water and similar effects  .5 proper procedures for anchoring and mooring	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved training ship experience  .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate  .4 approved training on a manned scale ship model, where appropriate	Safe operating limits of ship propulsion, steering and power systems are not exceeded in normal manoeuvres  Adjustments made to the ship's course and speed maintain safety of navigation

**Function: Cargo handling and stowage at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Monitor the loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage and the unloading of cargoes	<p><i>Cargo handling, stowage and securing</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the effect of cargo, including heavy lifts, on the seaworthiness and stability of the ship</p> <p>Knowledge of safe handling, stowage and securing of cargoes, including dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes, and their effect on the safety of life and of the ship</p> <p>Ability to establish and maintain effective communications during loading and unloading</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>Cargo operations are carried out in accordance with the cargo plan or other documents and established safety rules/regulations, equipment operating instructions and shipboard stowage limitations</p> <p>The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes complies with international regulations and recognized standards and codes of safe practice</p> <p>Communications are clear, understood and consistently successful</p>
Inspect and report defects and damage to cargo spaces, hatch covers and ballast tanks	<p>Knowledge* and ability to explain where to look for damage and defects most commonly encountered due to:</p> <p>.1 loading and unloading operations</p> <p>.2 corrosion</p> <p>.3 severe weather conditions</p> <p>Ability to state which parts of the ship shall be inspected each time in order to cover all parts within a given period of time</p> <p>Identify those elements of the ship structure which are critical to the safety of the ship</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>The inspections are carried out in accordance with laid-down procedures, and defects and damage are detected and properly reported</p> <p>Where no defects or damage are detected, the evidence from testing and examination clearly indicates adequate competence in adhering to procedures and ability to distinguish between normal and defective or damaged parts of the ship</p>

\* It should be understood that deck officers need not be qualified in the survey of ships.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Inspect and report defects and damage to cargo spaces, hatch covers and ballast tanks <i>(continued)</i>	State the causes of corrosion in cargo spaces and ballast tanks and how corrosion can be identified and prevented  Knowledge of procedures on how the inspections shall be carried out  Ability to explain how to ensure reliable detection of defects and damages  Understanding of the purpose of the “enhanced survey programme”		

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ensure compliance with pollution-prevention requirements	<p><i>Prevention of pollution of the marine environment and anti-pollution procedures</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Anti-pollution procedures and all associated equipment</p> <p>Importance of proactive measures to protect the marine environment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved training</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring shipboard operations and ensuring compliance with MARPOL requirements are fully observed</p> <p>Actions to ensure that a positive environmental reputation is maintained</p>
Maintain seaworthiness of the ship	<p><i>Ship stability</i></p> <p>Working knowledge and application of stability, trim and stress tables, diagrams and stress-calculating equipment</p> <p>Understanding of fundamental actions to be taken in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy</p> <p>Understanding of the fundamentals of watertight integrity</p> <p><i>Ship construction</i></p> <p>General knowledge of the principal structural members of a ship and the proper names for the various parts</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The stability conditions comply with the IMO intact stability criteria under all conditions of loading</p> <p>Actions to ensure and maintain the watertight integrity of the ship are in accordance with accepted practice</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Prevent, control and fight fires on board	<p><i>Fire prevention and fire-fighting appliances</i></p> <p>Ability to organize fire drills</p> <p>Knowledge of classes and chemistry of fire</p> <p>Knowledge of fire-fighting systems</p> <p>Knowledge of action to be taken in the event of fire, including fires involving oil systems</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved fire-fighting training and experience as set out in section A-VI/3	<p>The type and scale of the problem is promptly identified and initial actions conform with the emergency procedure and contingency plans for the ship</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The order of priority and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p>
Operate life-saving appliances	<p><i>Life-saving</i></p> <p>Ability to organize abandon ship drills and knowledge of the operation of survival craft and rescue boats, their launching appliances and arrangements, and their equipment, including radio life-saving appliances, satellite EPIRBs, SARTs, immersion suits and thermal protective aids</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/2, paragraphs 1 to 4	Actions in responding to abandon ship and survival situations are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions and comply with accepted safety practices and standards
Apply medical first aid on board ship	<p><i>Medical aid</i></p> <p>Practical application of medical guides and advice by radio, including the ability to take effective action based on such knowledge in the case of accidents or illnesses that are likely to occur on board ship</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training as set out in section A-VI/4, paragraphs 1 to 3	The identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries or conditions is prompt and treatment minimizes immediate threat to life
Monitor compliance with legislative requirements	Basic working knowledge of the relevant IMO conventions concerning safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment	Assessment of evidence obtained from examination or approved training	Legislative requirements relating to safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment are correctly identified

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Application of leadership and teamworking skills</p>	<p>Working knowledge of shipboard personnel management and training</p> <p>A knowledge of related international maritime conventions and recommendations, and national legislation</p> <p>Ability to apply task and workload management, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 planning and co-ordination</li> <li>.2 personnel assignment</li> <li>.3 time and resource constraints</li> <li>.4 prioritization</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply effective resource management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication onboard and ashore</li> <li>.3 decisions reflect consideration of team experiences</li> <li>.4 assertiveness and leadership, including motivation</li> <li>.5 obtaining and maintaining situational awareness</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training</li> <li>.2 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.3 practical demonstration</li> </ul>	<p>The crew are allocated duties and informed of expected standards of work and behaviour in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned</p> <p>Training objectives and activities are based on assessment of current competence and capabilities and operational requirements.</p> <p>Operations are demonstrated to be in accordance with applicable rules</p> <p>Operations are planned and resources are allocated as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p> <p>Effective leadership behaviours are demonstrated</p> <p>Necessary team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted vessel and operational status and external environment</p> <p>Decisions are most effective for the situation</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Application of leadership and teamworking skills            (continued)</p>	<p>Knowledge and ability to apply decision-making techniques:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 Situation and risk assessment</li> <li>.2 Identify and consider generated options</li> <li>.3 Selecting course of action</li> <li>.4 Evaluation of outcome effectiveness</li> </ol>		
<p>Contribute to the safety of personnel and ship</p>	<p>Knowledge of personal survival techniques</p> <p>Knowledge of fire prevention and ability to fight and extinguish fires</p> <p>Knowledge of elementary first aid</p> <p>Knowledge of personal safety and social responsibilities</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/1, paragraph 2</p>	<p>Appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>Procedures and safe working practices designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Procedures designed to safeguard the environment are observed at all times</p> <p>Initial and follow-up action on becoming aware of an emergency conforms with established emergency response procedures</p>

## **Section A-II/2**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of masters and chief mates on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more*

### **Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for certification as master or chief mate of ships of 500 gross tonnage or more shall be required to demonstrate the competence to undertake, at the management level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-II/2.

2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-II/2. This incorporates, expands and extends in depth the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-II/1 for officers in charge of a navigational watch.

3 Bearing in mind that the master has ultimate responsibility for the safety of the ship, its passengers, crew and cargo, and for the protection of the marine environment against pollution by the ship, and that a chief mate shall be in a position to assume that responsibility at any time, assessment in these subjects shall be designed to test their ability to assimilate all available information that affects the safety of the ship, its passengers, crew or cargo, or the protection of the marine environment.

4 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-II/2 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to serve in the capacity of master or chief mate\* .

5 The level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency required under the different sections in column 2 of table A-II/2 may be varied according to whether the certificate is to be valid for ships of 3,000 gross tonnage or more or for ships of between 500 gross tonnage and 3,000 gross tonnage.

6 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.

7 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-II/2.

### **Near-coastal voyages**

8 An Administration may issue a certificate restricted to service on ships engaged exclusively on near-coastal voyages and, for the issue of such a certificate, may exclude such subjects as are not applicable to the waters or ships concerned, bearing in mind the effect on the safety of all ships which may be operating in the same waters.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

*Table A-II/2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for masters and chief mates  
 on ships of 500 gross tonnage or more**

**Function: Navigation at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Plan a voyage and conduct navigation	<p>Voyage planning and navigation for all conditions by acceptable methods of plotting ocean tracks, taking into account, e.g.,:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 restricted waters</li> <li>.2 meteorological conditions</li> <li>.3 ice</li> <li>.4 restricted visibility</li> <li>.5 traffic separation schemes</li> <li>.6 vessel traffic service (VTS) areas</li> <li>.7 areas of extensive tidal effects</li> </ul> <p>Routeing in accordance with the General Provisions on Ships' Routeing</p> <p>Reporting in accordance with the General principles for Ship Reporting Systems and with VTS procedures</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul> <p>using chart catalogues, charts, nautical publications and ship particulars</p>	<p>The equipment, charts and nautical publications required for the voyage are enumerated and appropriate to the safe conduct of the voyage</p> <p>The reasons for the planned route are supported by facts and statistical data obtained from relevant sources and publications</p> <p>Positions, courses, distances and time calculations are correct within accepted accuracy standards for navigational equipment</p> <p>All potential navigational hazards are accurately identified</p>

Determine	Position determination in all	Examination and	The primary method chosen for
-----------	-------------------------------	-----------------	-------------------------------

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>position and the accuracy of resultant position fix by any means</p>	<p>conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 by celestial observations</li> <li>.2 by terrestrial observations, including the ability to use appropriate charts, notices to mariners and other publications to assess the accuracy of the resulting position fix</li> <li>.3 using modern electronic navigational aids, with specific knowledge of their operating principles, limitations, sources of error, detection of misrepresentation of information and methods of correction to obtain accurate position fixing</li> </ul>	<p>assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training, using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 charts, nautical almanac, plotting sheets, chronometer, sextant and a calculator</li> <li>.2 charts, nautical publications and navigational instruments (azimuth mirror, sextant, log, sounding equipment, compass) and manufacturers' manuals</li> <li>.3 radar, terrestrial electronic position-fixing systems, satellite navigation systems and appropriate nautical charts and publications</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>fixing the ship's position is the most appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>The fix obtained by celestial observations is within accepted accuracy levels</p> <p>The fix obtained by terrestrial observations is within accepted accuracy levels</p> <p>The accuracy of the resulting fix is properly assessed</p> <p>The fix obtained by the use of electronic navigational aids is within the accuracy standards of the systems in use. The possible errors affecting the accuracy of the resulting position are stated and methods of minimizing the effects of system errors on the resulting position are properly applied</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Determine and allow for compass errors	<p>Ability to determine and allow for errors of the magnetic and gyro-compasses</p> <p>Knowledge of the principles of magnetic and gyro-compasses</p> <p>An understanding of systems under the control of the master gyro and a knowledge of the operation and care of the main types of gyro-compass</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul> <p>using celestial observations, terrestrial bearings and comparison between magnetic and gyro-compasses</p>	<p>The method and frequency of checks for errors of magnetic and gyro-compasses ensures accuracy of information</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Coordinate search and rescue operations	A thorough knowledge of and ability to apply the procedures contained in the International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue (IAMSAR) Manual	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul> <p>using relevant publications, charts, meteorological data, particulars of ships involved, radiocommunication equipment and other available facilities and one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved SAR training course</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>The plan for coordinating search and rescue operations is in accordance with international guidelines and standards</p> <p>Radiocommunications are established and correct communication procedures are followed at all stages of the search and rescue operations</p>
Establish watchkeeping arrangements and procedures	<p>Thorough knowledge of content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</p> <p>Thorough knowledge of the content, application and intent of the Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul>	<p>Watchkeeping arrangements and procedures are established and maintained in compliance with international regulations and guidelines so as to ensure the safety of navigation, protection of the marine environment and safety of the ship and persons on board</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Maintain safe navigation through the use of information from navigation equipment and systems to assist command decision making</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Training and assessment in the use of ARPA is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ARPA. This limitation shall be reflected in the endorsement issued to the seafarer concerned</p>	<p>An appreciation of system errors and thorough understanding of the operational aspects of navigational systems</p> <p>Blind pilotage planning</p> <p>Evaluation of navigational information derived from all sources, including radar and ARPA, in order to make and implement command decisions for collision avoidance and for directing the safe navigation of the ship</p> <p>The interrelationship and optimum use of all navigational data available for conducting navigation</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from approved ARPA simulator training and one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ol>	<p>Information obtained from navigation equipment and systems is correctly interpreted and analysed, taking into account the limitations of the equipment and prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>Action taken to avoid a close encounter or collision with another vessel is in accordance with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</p>
<p>Maintain the safety of navigation through the use of ECDIS and associated navigation systems to assist command decision making</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Training and assessment in the use of ECDIS is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ECDIS. This limitation shall be reflected in the</p>	<p>Management of operational procedures, system files and data, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 manage procurement, licensing and updating of chart data and system software to conform to established procedures</li> <li>.2 system and information updating, including the ability to update ECDIS system version in accordance with vendor's product development</li> <li>.3 create and maintain system configuration and backup files</li> <li>.4 create and maintain log files in accordance with established procedures</li> </ol>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved ECDIS simulator training</li> </ol>	<p>Operational procedures for using ECDIS are established, applied, and monitored</p> <p>Actions taken to minimize risk to safety of navigation</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
endorsement issued to the seafarer concerned	<p>.5 create and maintain route plan files in accordance with established procedures</p> <p>.6 use ECDIS log-book and track history functions for inspection of system functions, alarm settings and user responses</p> <p>Use ECDIS playback functionality for passage review, route planning and review of system functions</p>		
Forecast weather and oceanographic conditions	<p>Ability to understand and interpret a synoptic chart and to forecast area weather, taking into account local weather conditions and information received by weather fax</p> <p>Knowledge of the characteristics of various weather systems, including tropical revolving storms and avoidance of storm centres and the dangerous quadrants</p> <p>Knowledge of ocean current systems</p> <p>Ability to calculate tidal conditions</p> <p>Use all appropriate nautical publications on tides and currents</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The likely weather conditions predicted for a determined period are based on all available information</p> <p>Actions taken to maintain safety of navigation minimize any risk to safety of the ship</p> <p>Reasons for intended action are backed by statistical data and observations of the actual weather conditions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Respond to navigational emergencies	<p>Precautions when beaching a ship</p> <p>Action to be taken if grounding is imminent, and after grounding</p> <p>Refloating a grounded ship with and without assistance</p> <p>Action to be taken if collision is imminent and following a collision or impairment of the watertight integrity of the hull by any cause</p> <p>Assessment of damage control</p> <p>Emergency steering</p> <p>Emergency towing arrangements and towing procedure</p>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction, in-service experience and practical drills in emergency procedures	<p>The type and scale of any problem is promptly identified and decisions and actions minimize the effects of any malfunction of the ship's systems</p> <p>Communications are effective and comply with established procedures</p> <p>Decisions and actions maximize safety of persons on board</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions</p>	<p>Manoeuvring and handling a ship in all conditions, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 manoeuvres when approaching pilot stations and embarking or disembarking pilots, with due regard to weather, tide, headreach and stopping distances</li> <li>.2 handling ship in rivers, estuaries and restricted waters, having regard to the effects of current, wind and restricted water on helm response</li> <li>.3 application of constant-rate-of-turn techniques</li> <li>.4 manoeuvring in shallow water, including the reduction in under-keel clearance caused by squat, rolling and pitching</li> <li>.5 interaction between passing ships and between own ship and nearby banks (canal effect)</li> <li>.6 berthing and unberthing under various conditions of wind, tide and current with and without tugs</li> <li>.7 ship and tug interaction</li> <li>.8 use of propulsion and manoeuvring systems</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved manned scale ship model, where appropriate</li> </ul>	<p>All decisions concerning berthing and anchoring are based on a proper assessment of the ship's manoeuvring and engine characteristics and the forces to be expected while berthed alongside or lying at anchor</p> <p>While under way, a full assessment is made of possible effects of shallow and restricted waters, ice, banks, tidal conditions, passing ships and own ship's bow and stern wave so that the ship can be safely manoeuvred under various conditions of loading and weather</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions <i>(continued)</i>	<p>.9 choice of anchorage; anchoring with one or two anchors in limited anchorages and factors involved in determining the length of anchor cable to be used</p> <p>.10 dragging anchor; clearing fouled anchors</p> <p>.11 dry-docking, both with and without damage</p> <p>.12 management and handling of ships in heavy weather, including assisting a ship or aircraft in distress; towing operations; means of keeping an unmanageable ship out of trough of the sea, lessening drift and use of oil</p> <p>.13 precautions in manoeuvring to launch rescue boats or survival craft in bad weather</p> <p>.14 methods of taking on board survivors from rescue boats and survival craft</p> <p>.15 ability to determine the manoeuvring and propulsion characteristics of common types of ships, with special reference to stopping distances and turning circles at various draughts and speeds</p> <p>.16 importance of navigating at reduced speed to avoid damage caused by own ship's bow wave and stern wave</p>		

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manoeuvre and handle a ship in all conditions (continued)	.17 practical measures to be taken when navigating in or near ice or in conditions of ice accumulation on board  .18 use of, and manoeuvring in and near, traffic separation schemes and in vessel traffic service (VTS) areas		
Operate remote controls of propulsion plant and engineering systems and services	Operating principles of marine power plants  Ships' auxiliary machinery  General knowledge of marine engineering terms	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved simulator training, where appropriate	Plant, auxiliary machinery and equipment is operated in accordance with technical specifications and within safe operating limits at all times

**Function: Cargo handling and stowage at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Plan and ensure safe loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage and unloading of cargoes	Knowledge of and ability to apply relevant international regulations, codes and standards concerning the safe handling, stowage, securing and transport of cargoes  Knowledge of the effect on trim and stability of cargoes and cargo operations  Use of stability and trim diagrams and stress-calculating equipment, including automatic data-based (ADB) equipment, and knowledge of loading cargoes and	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved simulator training, where appropriate  using stability, trim and stress tables, diagrams and stress-calculating equipment	The frequency and extent of cargo condition monitoring is appropriate to its nature and prevailing conditions  Unacceptable or unforeseen variations in the condition or specification of the cargo are promptly recognized and remedial action is immediately taken and designed to safeguard the safety of the ship and those on board  Cargo operations are planned and executed in accordance with established procedures and legislative requirements

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Plan and ensure safe loading, stowage, securing, care during the voyage and unloading of cargoes  <i>(continued)</i></p>	<p>ballasting in order to keep hull stress within acceptable limits</p> <p>Stowage and securing of cargoes on board ships, including cargo-handling gear and securing and lashing equipment</p> <p>Loading and unloading operations, with special regard to the transport of cargoes identified in the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing</p> <p>General knowledge of tankers and tanker operations</p> <p>Knowledge of the operational and design limitations of bulk carriers</p> <p>Ability to use all available shipboard data related to loading, care and unloading of bulk cargoes</p> <p>Ability to establish procedures for safe cargo handling in accordance with the provisions of the relevant instruments such as IMDG Code, <b>IMSBC Code</b>, MARPOL 73/78 Annexes III and V and other relevant information</p> <p>Ability to explain the basic principles for establishing effective communications and improving working relationship between ship and terminal personnel</p>		<p>Stowage and securing of cargoes ensures that stability and stress conditions remain within safe limits at all times during the voyage</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Assess reported defects and damage to cargo spaces, hatch covers and ballast tanks and take appropriate action	<p>Knowledge of the limitations on strength of the vital constructional parts of a standard bulk carrier and ability to interpret given figures for bending moments and shear forces</p> <p>Ability to explain how to avoid the detrimental effects on bulk carriers of corrosion, fatigue and inadequate cargo handling</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul> <p>using stability, trim and stress tables, diagrams and stress-calculating equipment</p>	<p>Evaluations are based on accepted principles, well-founded arguments and correctly carried out. The decisions taken are acceptable, taking into consideration the safety of the ship and the prevailing conditions</p>
Carriage of dangerous goods	<p>International regulations, standards, codes and recommendations on the carriage of dangerous cargoes, including the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code and the International Maritime Solid Bulk Cargoes (IMSBC) Code</p> <p>Carriage of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes; precautions during loading and unloading and care during the voyage</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.3 approved specialist training</li> </ul>	<p>Planned distribution of cargo is based on reliable information and is in accordance with established guidelines and legislative requirements</p> <p>Information on dangers, hazards and special requirements is recorded in a format suitable for easy reference in the event of an incident</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the management level**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Control trim, stability and stress	<p>Understanding of fundamental principles of ship construction and the theories and factors affecting trim and stability and measures necessary to preserve trim and stability</p> <p>Knowledge of the effect on trim and stability of a ship in the event of damage to and consequent flooding of a compartment and countermeasures to be taken</p> <p>Knowledge of IMO recommendations concerning ship stability</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	Stability and stress conditions are maintained within safe limits at all times

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea and the protection of the marine environment</p>	<p>Knowledge of international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions</p> <p>Regard shall be paid especially to the following subjects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 certificates and other documents required to be carried on board ships by international conventions, how they may be obtained and their period of validity</li> <li>.2 responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines</li> <li>.3 responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea</li> <li>.4 responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships</li> <li>.5 maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations</li> <li>.6 responsibilities under international instruments affecting the safety of the ship, passengers, crew and cargo</li> <li>.7 methods and aids to prevent pollution of the marine environment by ships</li> <li>.8 national legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures for monitoring operations and maintenance comply with legislative requirements</p> <p>Potential non-compliance is promptly and fully identified</p> <p>Planned renewal and extension of certificates ensures continued validity of surveyed items and equipment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Maintain safety and security of the ship's crew and passengers and the operational condition of life-saving, fire-fighting and other safety systems</p>	<p>Thorough knowledge of life-saving appliance regulations (International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea)</p> <p>Organization of fire drills and abandon ship drills</p> <p>Maintenance of operational condition of life-saving, fire-fighting and other safety systems</p> <p>Actions to be taken to protect and safeguard all persons on board in emergencies</p> <p>Actions to limit damage and save the ship following a fire, explosion, collision or grounding</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction and approved in-service training and experience</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring fire-detection and safety systems ensure that all alarms are detected promptly and acted upon in accordance with established emergency procedures</p>
<p>Develop emergency and damage control plans and handle emergency situations</p>	<p>Preparation of contingency plans for response to emergencies</p> <p>Ship construction, including damage control</p> <p>Methods and aids for fire prevention, detection and extinction</p> <p>Functions and use of life-saving appliances</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from approved in-service training and experience</p>	<p>Emergency procedures are in accordance with the established plans for emergency situations</p>
<p>Use of leadership and managerial skill</p>	<p>Knowledge of shipboard personnel management and training</p> <p>A knowledge of related international maritime conventions and recommendations, and national legislation</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training</li> <li>.2 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> </ul>	

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Use of leadership and managerial skill (continued)</p>	<p>Ability to apply task and workload management, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 planning and co-ordination</li> <li>.2 personnel assignment</li> <li>.3 time and resource constraints</li> <li>.4 prioritization</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply effective resource management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication on board and ashore</li> <li>.3 decisions reflect consideration of team experiences</li> <li>.4 assertiveness and leadership, including motivation</li> <li>.5 obtaining and maintaining situation awareness</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply decision-making techniques:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 situation and risk assessment</li> <li>.2 identify and generate options</li> <li>.3 selecting course of action</li> <li>.4 evaluation of outcome effectiveness</li> </ul>		<p>The crew are allocated duties and informed of expected standards of work and behaviour in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned</p> <p>Training objectives and activities are based on assessment of current competence and capabilities and operational requirements</p> <p>Operations are demonstrated to be in accordance with applicable rules</p> <p>Operations are planned and resources are allocated as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p> <p>Effective leadership behaviours are demonstrated</p> <p>Necessary team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted vessel and operational status and external environment</p> <p>Decisions are most effective for the situation</p> <p>Operations are demonstrated to be effective and in accordance with applicable rules</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Use of leadership and managerial skill (continued)	Development, implementation, and oversight of standard operating procedures		
Organize and manage the provision of medical care on board	<p>A thorough knowledge* of the use and contents of the following publications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 International Medical Guide for Ships or equivalent national publications</li> <li>.2 medical section of the International Code of Signals</li> <li>.3 Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods</li> </ul>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from approved training	Actions taken and procedures followed correctly apply and make full use of advice available

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

### **Section A-II/3**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of officers in charge of a navigational watch and of masters on ships of less than 500 gross tonnage, engaged on near-coastal voyages*

## **OFFICER IN CHARGE OF A NAVIGATIONAL WATCH**

### **Standard of competence**

- 1 Every candidate for certification shall:
  - .1 be required to demonstrate the competence to undertake, at operational level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-II/3;
  - .2 at least hold **the** appropriate certificate for performing VHF radiocommunications in accordance with the requirements of the Radio Regulations; and
  - .3 if designated to have primary responsibility for radiocommunications during distress incidents, hold **the** appropriate certificate issued or recognized under the provisions of the Radio Regulations.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-II/3.
- 3 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-II/3 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to serve in the capacity of officer in charge of a navigational watch.
- 4 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall be based on section A-VIII/2, part 4-1 – Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch, and shall also take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.
- 5 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-II/3.

### **Special training**

- 6 Every candidate for certification as officer in charge of a navigational watch on ships of less than 500 gross tonnage, engaged on near-coastal voyages, who, in accordance with paragraph 4.2.1 of regulation II/3, is required to have completed special training, shall follow an approved programme of onboard training which:
  - .1 ensures that, during the required period of seagoing service, the candidate receives systematic practical training and experience in the tasks, duties and responsibilities of an officer in charge of a navigational watch, taking into account the guidance given in section B-II/1 of this Code;

- .2 is closely supervised and monitored by qualified officers on board the ships in which the approved seagoing service is performed; and
- .3 is adequately documented in a training record book or similar document\*.

## **MASTER**

7 Every candidate for certification as master on ships of less than 500 gross tonnage, engaged on near-coastal voyages, shall meet the requirements for an officer in charge of a navigational watch set out below and, in addition, shall be required to provide evidence of knowledge and ability to carry out all the duties of such a master.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) and a similar document produced by the International Shipping Federation may be of assistance in the preparation of training record books.

*Table A-II/3*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for officers in charge of  
a navigational watch and for masters on ships of less than 500 gross tonnage  
engaged on near-coastal voyages**

**Function:     Navigation at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Plan and conduct a coastal passage and determine position</p> <p>Note: Training and assessment in the use of ECDIS is not required for those who serve exclusively on ships not fitted with ECDIS. These limitations shall be reflected in the endorsement issued to the seafarer concerned</p>	<p><i>Navigation</i></p> <p>Ability to determine the ship's position by the use of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 landmarks</li> <li>.2 aids to navigation, including lighthouses, beacons and buoys</li> <li>.3 dead reckoning, taking into account winds, tides, currents and estimated speed</li> </ul> <p>Thorough knowledge of and ability to use nautical charts and publications, such as sailing directions, tide tables, notices to mariners, radio navigational warnings and ships' routeing information</p> <p>Reporting in accordance with General Principles for Ship Reporting Systems and with VTS procedures</p> <p>Note: This item is only required for certification as master</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul> <p>using chart catalogues, charts, nautical publications, radio navigational warnings, sextant, azimuth mirror, electronic navigation equipment, echo-sounding equipment, compass</p>	<p>Information obtained from nautical charts and publications is relevant, interpreted correctly and properly applied</p> <p>The primary method of fixing the ship's position is the most appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>The position is determined within the limits of acceptable instrument/system errors</p> <p>The reliability of the information obtained from the primary method of position fixing is checked at appropriate intervals</p> <p>Calculations and measurements of navigational information are accurate</p> <p>Charts and publications selected are the largest scale on board suitable for the area of navigation and charts are corrected in accordance with the latest information available</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Plan and conduct a coastal passage and determine position <i>(continued)</i>	<p>Voyage planning and navigation for all conditions by acceptable methods of plotting coastal tracks, taking into account, e.g.:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 restricted waters</li> <li>.2 meteorological conditions</li> <li>.3 ice</li> <li>.4 restricted visibility</li> <li>.5 traffic separation schemes</li> <li>.6 vessel traffic service (VTS) areas</li> <li>.7 areas of extensive tidal effects</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> This item is only required for certification as master</p> <p>Thorough knowledge of and ability to use ECDIS</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.2 approved ECDIS simulator training</li> </ul>	

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Plan and conduct a coastal passage and determine position (continued)</p>	<p><i>Navigational aids and equipment</i></p> <p>Ability to operate safely and determine the ship's position by use of all navigational aids and equipment commonly fitted on board the ships concerned</p> <p><i>Compasses</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the errors and corrections of magnetic compasses</p> <p>Ability to determine errors of the compass, using terrestrial means, and to allow for such errors</p> <p><i>Automatic pilot</i></p> <p>Knowledge of automatic pilot systems and procedures; change-over from manual to automatic control and vice versa; adjustment of controls for optimum performance</p> <p><i>Meteorology</i></p> <p>Ability to use and interpret information obtained from shipborne meteorological instruments</p> <p>Knowledge of the characteristics of the various weather systems, reporting procedures and recording systems</p> <p>Ability to apply the meteorological information available</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved radar navigation and ARPA simulator training</p>	<p>Performance checks and tests of navigation systems comply with manufacturer's recommendations, good navigational practice and IMO resolutions on performance standards for navigational equipment</p> <p>Interpretation and analysis of information obtained from radar is in accordance with accepted navigational practice and takes account of the limits and accuracy levels of radar</p> <p>Errors in magnetic compasses are determined and applied correctly to courses and bearings</p> <p>Selection of the mode of steering is the most suitable for prevailing weather, sea and traffic conditions and intended manoeuvres</p> <p>Measurements and observations of weather conditions are accurate and appropriate to the passage</p> <p>Meteorological information is evaluated and applied to maintain the safe passage of the vessel</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain a safe navigational watch	<p><i>Watchkeeping</i></p> <p>Thorough knowledge of content, application and intent of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</p> <p>Knowledge of content of the Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch</p> <p>Use of routing in accordance with the General Provisions on Ships' Routeing</p> <p>Use of reporting in accordance with the General Principles for Ship Reporting Systems and with VTS procedures</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>The conduct, handover and relief of the watch conforms with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>A proper look-out is maintained at all times and in conformity with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>Lights, shapes and sound signals conform with the requirements contained in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 and are correctly recognized</p> <p>The frequency and extent of monitoring of traffic, the ship and the environment conform with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>Action to avoid close encounters and collision with other vessels is in accordance with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972</p> <p>Decisions to adjust course and/or speed are both timely and in accordance with accepted navigation procedures</p> <p>A proper record is maintained of movements and activities relating to the navigation of the ship</p> <p>Responsibility for safe navigation is clearly defined at all times, including periods when the master is on the bridge and when under pilotage</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Respond to emergencies	<p>Emergency procedures, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 precautions for the protection and safety of passengers in emergency situations</li> <li>.2 initial assessment of damage and damage control</li> <li>.3 action to be taken following a collision</li> <li>.4 action to be taken following a grounding</li> </ul> <p>In addition, the following material should be included for certification as master:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 emergency steering</li> <li>.2 arrangements for towing and for being taken in tow</li> <li>.3 rescuing persons from the sea</li> <li>.4 assisting a vessel in distress</li> <li>.5 appreciation of the action to be taken when emergencies arise in port</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 practical instruction</li> </ul>	<p>The type and scale of the emergency is promptly identified</p> <p>Initial actions and, if appropriate, manoeuvring are in accordance with contingency plans and are appropriate to the urgency of the situation and the nature of the emergency</p>
Respond to a distress signal at sea	<p><i>Search and rescue</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the contents of the International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue (IAMSAR) Manual</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction or approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>The distress or emergency signal is immediately recognized</p> <p>Contingency plans and instructions in standing orders are implemented and complied with</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manoeuvre the ship and operate small ship power plants	<i>Ship manoeuvring and handling</i>  Knowledge of factors affecting safe manoeuvring and handling  The operation of small ship power plants and auxiliaries  Proper procedures for anchoring and mooring	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved training ship experience  .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate	Safe operating limits of ship propulsion, steering and power systems are not exceeded in normal manoeuvres  Adjustments made to the ship's course and speed maintain safety of navigation  Plant, auxiliary machinery and equipment is operated in accordance with technical specifications and within safe operating limits at all times

**Function: Cargo handling and stowage at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Monitor the loading, stowage, securing and unloading of cargoes and their care during the voyage	<p><i>Cargo handling, stowage and securing</i></p> <p>Knowledge of safe handling, stowage and securing of cargoes, including dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes, and their effect on the safety of life and of the ship</p> <p>Use of the International Maritime Dangerous Goods (IMDG) Code</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>Cargo operations are carried out in accordance with the cargo plan or other documents and established safety rules/regulations, equipment operating instructions and shipboard stowage limitations</p> <p>The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes complies with international regulations and recognized standards and codes of safe practice</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ensure compliance with pollution-prevention requirements	<p><i>Prevention of pollution of the marine environment and anti-pollution procedures</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Anti-pollution procedures and all associated equipment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring shipboard operations and ensuring compliance with MARPOL requirements are fully observed</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain seaworthiness of the ship	<p><i>Ship stability</i></p> <p>Working knowledge and application of stability, trim and stress tables, diagrams and stress-calculating equipment</p> <p>Understanding of fundamental actions to be taken in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy</p> <p>Understanding of the fundamentals of watertight integrity</p> <p><i>Ship construction</i></p> <p>General knowledge of the principal structural members of a ship and the proper names for the various parts</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The stability conditions comply with the IMO intact stability criteria under all conditions of loading</p> <p>Actions to ensure and maintain the watertight integrity of the ship are in accordance with accepted practice</p>
Prevent, control and fight fires on board	<p><i>Fire prevention and fire-fighting appliances</i></p> <p>Ability to organize fire drills</p> <p>Knowledge of classes and chemistry of fire</p> <p>Knowledge of fire-fighting systems</p> <p>Understanding of action to be taken in the event of fire, including fires involving oil systems</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved fire-fighting training and experience as set out in section A-VI/3</p>	<p>The type and scale of the problem is promptly identified and initial actions conform with the emergency procedure and contingency plans for the ship</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The order of priority, and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board, are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p>
Operate life-saving appliances	<p><i>Life-saving</i></p> <p>Ability to organize abandon ship drills and knowledge of the operation of survival craft and rescue boats, their launching appliances and</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/2, paragraphs 1 to 4</p>	<p>Actions in responding to abandon ship and survival situations are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions and comply with accepted safety practices and standards</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate life-saving appliances (continued)	arrangements, and their equipment, including radio life-saving appliances, satellite EPIRBs, SARTs, immersion suits and thermal protective aids		
Apply medical first aid on board ship	<i>Medical aid</i> Practical application of medical guides and advice by radio, including the ability to take effective action based on such knowledge in the case of accidents or illnesses that are likely to occur on board ship	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training as set out in section A-VI/4, paragraphs 1 to 3	The identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries or conditions is prompt and treatment minimizes immediate threat to life
Monitor compliance with legislative requirements	Basic working knowledge of the relevant IMO conventions concerning safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment	Assessment of evidence obtained from examination or approved training	Legislative requirements relating to safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment are correctly identified
Contribute to the safety of personnel and ship	Knowledge of personal survival techniques Knowledge of fire prevention and ability to fight and extinguish fires Knowledge of elementary first aid Knowledge of personal safety and social responsibilities	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experiences as set out in section A-VI/1, paragraph 2	Appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used Procedures and safe working practices designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times Procedures designed to safeguard the environment are observed at all times Initial and follow-up actions on becoming aware of an emergency conform with established emergency response procedures

## **Section A-II/4**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of ratings forming part of a navigational watch*

### **Standard of competence**

1 Every rating forming part of a navigational watch on a seagoing ship of 500 gross tonnage or more shall be required to demonstrate the competence to perform the navigation function at the support level, as specified in column 1 of table A-II/4.

2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required of ratings forming part of a navigational watch on a seagoing ship of 500 gross tonnage or more is listed in column 2 of table A-II/4.

3 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence specified in columns 3 and 4 of table A-II/4. The reference to “practical test” in column 3 may include approved shore-based training in which the students undergo practical testing.

4 Where there are no tables of competence for the support level in respect to certain functions, it remains the responsibility of the Administration to determine the appropriate training, assessment and certification requirements to be applied to personnel designated to perform those functions at the support level.

*Table A-II/4*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for ratings  
forming part of a navigational watch**

**Function:** Navigation at the support level

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Steer the ship and also comply with helm orders in the English language	Use of magnetic and gyro-compasses  Helm orders  Change-over from automatic pilot to hand steering and vice versa	Assessment of evidence obtained from:  .1 practical test, or  .2 approved in-service experience, or  .3 approved training ship experience	A steady course is steered within acceptable limits, having regard to the area of navigation and prevailing sea state. Alterations of course are smooth and controlled  Communications are clear and concise at all times and orders are acknowledged in a seamanlike manner
Keep a proper look-out by sight and hearing	Responsibilities of a look-out, including reporting the approximate bearing of a sound signal, light or other object in degrees or points	Assessment of evidence obtained from:  .1 practical test, or  .2 approved in-service experience, or  .3 approved training ship experience	Sound signals, lights and other objects are promptly detected and their appropriate bearing, in degrees or points, is reported to the officer of the watch
Contribute to monitoring and controlling a safe watch	Shipboard terms and definitions  Use of appropriate internal communication and alarm systems  Ability to understand orders and to communicate with the officer of the watch in matters relevant to watchkeeping duties  Procedures for the relief, maintenance and handover of a watch  Information required to maintain a safe watch  Basic environmental protection procedures	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved in-service experience or approved training ship experience	Communications are clear and concise and advice/clarification is sought from the officer on watch where watch information or instructions are not clearly understood  Maintenance, handover and relief of the watch is in conformity with accepted practices and procedures

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Operate emergency equipment and apply emergency procedures	<p>Knowledge of emergency duties and alarm signals</p> <p>Knowledge of pyrotechnic distress signals; satellite EPIRBs and SARTs</p> <p>Avoidance of false distress alerts and action to be taken in event of accidental activation</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from demonstration and approved in-service experience or approved training ship experience	<p>Initial action on becoming aware of an emergency or abnormal situation is in conformity with established practices and procedures</p> <p>Communications are clear and concise at all times and orders are acknowledged in a seamanlike manner</p> <p>The integrity of emergency and distress alerting systems is maintained at all times</p>

**Section A-II/5**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of ratings as able seafarer deck*

**Standard of competence**

- 1 Every able seafarer deck serving on a seagoing ship of 500 gross tonnage or more shall be required to demonstrate the competence to perform the functions at the support level, as specified in column 1 of table A-II/5.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required of an able seafarer deck serving on a seagoing ship of 500 gross tonnage or more is listed in column 2 of table A-II/5.
- 3 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence specified in columns 3 and 4 of table A-II/5.

Table A-II/5

**Specification of minimum standards of competence of ratings as able seafarer deck**

**Function: Navigation at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to a safe navigational watch	<p>Ability to understand orders and to communicate with the officer of the watch in matters relevant to watchkeeping duties</p> <p>Procedures for the relief, maintenance and handover of a watch</p> <p>Information required to maintain a safe watch</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from in-service experience or practical test	<p>Communications are clear and concise</p> <p>Maintenance, handover and relief of the watch is in conformity with acceptable practices and procedures</p>
Contribute to berthing, anchoring and other mooring operations	<p>Working knowledge of the mooring system and related procedures, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the function of mooring and tug lines and how each line functions as part of an overall system</li> <li>.2 the capacities, safe working loads, and breaking strengths of mooring equipment, including mooring wires, synthetic and fibre lines, winches, anchor windlasses, capstans, bitts, chocks and bollards</li> <li>.3 the procedures and order of events for making fast and letting go mooring and tug lines and wires, including towing lines</li> <li>.4 the procedures and order of events for the use of anchors in various operations</li> </ol> <p>Working knowledge of the procedures and order of events associated with mooring to a buoy or buoys</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.5 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ol>	Operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions

**Function: Cargo handling and stowage at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Contribute to the handling of cargo and stores	<p>Knowledge of procedures for safe handling, stowage and securing of cargoes and stores, including dangerous, hazardous and harmful substances and liquids</p> <p>Basic knowledge of and precautions to observe in connection with particular types of cargo and identification of IMDG labelling</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.5 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul>	<p>Cargo and stores operations are carried out in accordance with established safety procedures and equipment operating instructions</p> <p>The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful cargoes or stores complies with established safety practices</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Contribute to the safe operation of deck equipment and machinery	<p>Knowledge of deck equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 function and uses of valves and pumps, hoists, cranes, booms, and related equipment</li> <li>.2 function and uses of winches, windlasses, capstans and related equipment</li> <li>.3 hatches, watertight doors, ports, and related equipment</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the safe operation of deck equipment and machinery <i>(continued)</i>	<p>.4 fibre and wire ropes, cables and chains, including their construction, use, markings, maintenance and proper stowage</p> <p>.5 ability to use and understand basic signals for the operation of equipment, including winches, windlasses, cranes, and hoists</p> <p>.6 ability to operate anchoring equipment under various conditions, such as anchoring, weighing anchor, securing for sea, and in emergencies</p> <p>Knowledge of the following procedures and ability to:</p> <p>.1 rig and unrig bosun's chairs and staging</p> <p>.2 rig and unrig pilot ladders, hoists, rat-guards and gangways</p> <p>.3 use marlin spike seamanship skills, including the proper use of knots, splices and stoppers</p> <p>Use and handling of deck and cargo-handling gear and equipment:</p> <p>.1 access arrangements, hatches and hatch covers, ramps, side/bow/stern doors or elevators</p> <p>.2 pipeline systems – bilge and ballast suctions and wells</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration</p> <p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration</p> <p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration</p>	<p>Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful</p> <p>Equipment operation is safely carried out in accordance with established procedures</p> <p>Demonstrate the proper methods for rigging and unrigging in accordance with safe industry practice</p> <p>Demonstrate the proper creation and use of knots, splices, stoppers, whippings, servings as well as proper canvas handling</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the safe operation of deck equipment and machinery <i>(continued)</i>	.3 cranes, derricks, winches  Knowledge of hoisting and dipping flags and the main single-flag signals. (A, B, G, H, O, P, Q)		Demonstrate the proper use of blocks and tackle  Demonstrate the proper methods for handling lines, wires, cables and chains
Apply occupational health and safety precautions	Working knowledge of safe working practices and personal shipboard safety including:  .1 working aloft .2 working over the side .3 working in enclosed spaces .4 permit to work systems .5 line handling .6 lifting techniques and methods of preventing back injury .7 electrical safety .8 mechanical safety .9 chemical and biohazard safety .10 personal safety equipment	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience .2 practical training .3 examination .4 approved training ship experience	Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times  Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used at all times
Apply precautions and contribute to the prevention of pollution of the marine environment	Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment  Knowledge of the use and operation of anti-pollution equipment  Knowledge of the approved methods for disposal of marine pollutants	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience .2 practical training .3 examination .4 approved training ship experience	Procedures designed to safeguard the marine environment are observed at all times

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Operate survival craft and rescue boats	<p>Knowledge of the operation of survival craft and rescue boats, their launching appliances and arrangements, and their equipment</p> <p>Knowledge of survival at sea techniques</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/2, paragraphs 1 to 4	Actions in responding to abandon ship and survival situations are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions and comply with accepted safety practices and standards

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Contribute to shipboard maintenance and repair	<p>Knowledge of surface preparation techniques</p> <p>Ability to use painting, lubrication and cleaning materials and equipment</p> <p>Ability to understand and execute routine maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Understanding manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions</p> <p>Knowledge of safe disposal of waste materials</p> <p>Knowledge of the application, maintenance and use of hand and power tools</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration</p> <p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 practical training</p> <p>.3 examination</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	Maintenance and repair activities are carried out in accordance with technical, safety and procedural specifications

## CHAPTER III

### Standards regarding engine department

#### Section A-III/1

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or as designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room*

#### Training

1 The education and training required by paragraph 2.4 of regulation III/1 shall include training in mechanical and electrical workshop skills relevant to the duties of an engineer officer.

#### Onboard training

2 Every candidate for certification as officer in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or as designated duty engineer in a periodically unmanned engine-room of ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW or more shall follow an approved programme of onboard training which:

- .1 ensures that, during the required period of seagoing service, the candidate receives systematic practical training and experience in the tasks, duties and responsibilities of an officer in charge of an engine-room watch, taking into account the guidance given in section B-III/1 of this Code;
- .2 is closely supervised and monitored by a qualified and certificated engineer officer aboard the ships in which the approved seagoing service is performed; and
- .3 is adequately documented in a training record book.

#### Standard of competence

3 Every candidate for certification as officer in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or as designated duty engineer in a periodically unmanned engine-room on a seagoing ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW propulsion power or more shall be required to demonstrate ability to undertake, at the operational level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-III/1.

4 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-III/1.

5 The level of knowledge of the material listed in column 2 of table A-III/1 shall be sufficient for engineer officers to carry out their watchkeeping duties.\*

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

6 Training and experience to achieve the necessary theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall be based on section A-VIII/2, part 4-2 – Principles to be observed in keeping an engineering watch, and shall take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.

7 Candidates for certification for service in ships in which steam boilers do not form part of their machinery may omit the relevant requirements of table A-III/1. A certificate awarded on such a basis shall not be valid for service on ships in which steam boilers form part of a ship's machinery until the engineer officer meets the standard of competence in the items omitted from table A-III/1. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

8 The Administration may omit knowledge requirements for types of propulsion machinery other than those machinery installations for which the certificate to be awarded shall be valid. A certificate awarded on such a basis shall not be valid for any category of machinery installation which has been omitted until the engineer officer proves to be competent in these knowledge requirements. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

9 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/1.

#### **Near-coastal voyages**

10 The requirements of paragraphs 2.2 to 2.5 of regulation III/1 relating to level of knowledge, understanding and proficiency required under the different sections listed in column 2 of table A-III/1 may be varied for engineer officers of ships powered by main propulsion machinery of less than 3,000 kW propulsion power engaged on near-coastal voyages, as considered necessary, bearing in mind the effect on the safety of all ships which may be operating in the same waters. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

*Table A-III/1*

**Specification of minimum standard of competence for officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room**

**Function: Marine engineering at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain a safe engineering watch	<p>Thorough knowledge of Principles to be observed in keeping an engineering watch, including:</p> <p>.1 duties associated with taking over and accepting a watch</p> <p>.2 routine duties undertaken during a watch</p> <p>.3 maintenance of the machinery space logs and the significance of the readings taken</p> <p>.4 duties associated with handing over a watch</p> <p>Safety and emergency procedures; change-over of remote/automatic to local control of all systems</p> <p>Safety precautions to be observed during a watch and immediate actions to be taken in the event of fire or accident, with particular reference to oil systems</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The conduct, handover and relief of the watch conforms with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>The frequency and extent of monitoring of engineering equipment and systems conforms to manufacturers' recommendations and accepted principles and procedures, including Principles to be observed in keeping an engineering watch</p> <p>A proper record is maintained of the movements and activities relating to the ship's engineering systems</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain a safe engineering watch (continued)	<p><i>Engine-room resource management</i></p> <p>Knowledge of engine-room resource management principles, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication</li> <li>.3 assertiveness and leadership</li> <li>.4 obtaining and maintaining situational awareness</li> <li>.5 Consideration of team experience</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training</li> <li>.2 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> </ul>	<p>Resources are allocated and assigned as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p> <p>Questionable decisions and/or actions result in appropriate challenge and response</p> <p>Effective leadership behaviours are identified</p> <p>Team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted engine-room and associated systems state, and of external environment</p>
Use English in written and oral form	Adequate knowledge of the English language to enable the officer to use engineering publications and to perform engineering duties	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction	<p>English language publications relevant to engineering duties are correctly interpreted</p> <p>Communications are clear and understood</p>
Use internal communication systems	Operation of all internal communication systems on board	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>Transmission and reception of messages are consistently successful</p> <p>Communication records are complete, accurate and comply with statutory requirements</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate main and auxiliary machinery and associated control systems	<p>Basic construction and operation principles of machinery systems, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 marine diesel engine</li> <li>.2 marine steam turbine</li> <li>.3 marine gas turbine</li> <li>.4 marine boiler</li> <li>.5 shafting installations, including propeller</li> <li>.6 other auxiliaries, including various pumps, air compressor, purifier, fresh water generator, heat exchanger, refrigeration, air-conditioning and ventilation systems</li> <li>.7 steering gear</li> <li>.8 automatic control systems</li> <li>.9 fluid flow and characteristics of lubricating oil, fuel oil and cooling systems</li> <li>.10 deck machinery</li> </ul> <p>Safety and emergency procedures for operation of propulsion plant machinery, including control systems</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>Construction and operating mechanisms can be understood and explained with drawings/instructions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate main and auxiliary machinery and associated control systems (continued)	<p>Preparation, operation, fault detection and necessary measures to prevent damage for the following machinery items and control systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 main engine and associated auxiliaries</li> <li>.2 steam boiler and associated auxiliaries and steam systems</li> <li>.3 auxiliary prime movers and associated systems</li> <li>.4 other auxiliaries, including refrigeration, air-conditioning and ventilation systems</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>Operations are planned and carried out in accordance with operating manuals, established rules and procedures to ensure safety of operations and avoid pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Deviations from the norm are promptly identified</p> <p>The output of plant and engineering systems consistently meets requirements, including bridge orders relating to changes in speed and direction</p> <p>The causes of machinery malfunctions are promptly identified and actions are designed to ensure the overall safety of the ship and the plant, having regard to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>
Operate fuel, lubrication, ballast and other pumping systems and associated control systems	<p>Operational characteristics of pumps and piping systems, including control systems</p> <p>Operation of pumping systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 routine pumping operations</li> <li>.2 operation of bilge, ballast and cargo pumping systems</li> </ul> <p>Oily-water separators (or similar equipment) requirements and operation</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>Operations are planned and carried out in accordance with operating manuals, established rules and procedures to ensure safety of operations and avoid pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Deviations from the norm are promptly identified and appropriate action is taken</p>

**Function: Electrical, electronic and control engineering at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate electrical, electronic and control systems	<p>Basic configuration and operation principles of the following electrical, electronic and control equipment:</p> <p>.1 electrical equipment:</p> <p>.a generator and distribution systems</p> <p>.b preparing, starting, paralleling and changing over generators</p> <p>.c electrical motors including starting methodologies</p> <p>.d high-voltage installations</p> <p>.e sequential control circuits and associated system devices</p> <p>.2 electronic equipment:</p> <p>.a characteristics of basic electronic circuit elements</p> <p>.b flowchart for automatic and control systems</p> <p>.c functions, characteristics and features of control systems for machinery items, including main propulsion plant operation control and steam boiler automatic controls</p> <p>.3 control systems:</p> <p>.a various automatic control methodologies and characteristics</p> <p>.b Proportional–Integral–Derivative (PID) control characteristics and associated system devices for process control</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Operations are planned and carried out in accordance with operating manuals, established rules and procedures to ensure safety of operations</p> <p>Electrical, electronic and control systems can be understood and explained with drawings/instructions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Maintenance and repair of electrical and electronic equipment</p>	<p>Safety requirements for working on shipboard electrical systems, including the safe isolation of electrical equipment required before personnel are permitted to work on such equipment</p> <p>Maintenance and repair of electrical system equipment, switchboards, electric motors, generator and DC electrical systems and equipment</p> <p>Detection of electric malfunction, location of faults and measures to prevent damage</p> <p>Construction and operation of electrical testing and measuring equipment</p> <p>Function and performance tests of the following equipment and their configuration:</p> <p>.1 monitoring systems</p> <p>.2 automatic control devices</p> <p>.3 protective devices</p> <p>The interpretation of electrical and simple electronic diagrams</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved workshop skills training</p> <p>.2 approved practical experience and tests</p> <p>.3 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	<p>Safety measures for working are appropriate</p> <p>Selection and use of hand tools, measuring instruments, and testing equipment are appropriate and interpretation of results is accurate</p> <p>Dismantling, inspecting, repairing and reassembling equipment are in accordance with manuals and good practice</p> <p>Reassembling and performance testing is in accordance with manuals and good practice</p>

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Appropriate use of hand tools, machine tools and measuring instruments for fabrication and repair on board	<p>Characteristics and limitations of materials used in construction and repair of ships and equipment</p> <p>Characteristics and limitations of processes used for fabrication and repair</p> <p>Properties and parameters considered in the fabrication and repair of systems and components</p> <p>Methods for carrying out safe emergency/temporary repairs</p> <p>Safety measures to be taken to ensure a safe working environment and for using hand tools, machine tools and measuring instruments</p> <p>Use of hand tools, machine tools and measuring instruments</p> <p>Use of various types of sealants and packings</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved workshop skills training</p> <p>.2 approved practical experience and tests</p> <p>.3 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	<p>Identification of important parameters for fabrication of typical ship-related components is appropriate</p> <p>Selection of materials is appropriate</p> <p>Fabrication is to designated tolerances</p> <p>Use of equipment and hand tools, machine tools and measuring instruments is appropriate and safe</p>
Maintenance and repair of shipboard machinery and equipment	<p>Safety measures to be taken for repair and maintenance, including the safe isolation of shipboard machinery and equipment required before personnel are permitted to work on such machinery or equipment</p> <p>Appropriate basic mechanical knowledge and skills</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved workshop skills training</p> <p>.2 approved practical experience and tests</p> <p>.3 approved in-service experience</p>	<p>Safety procedures followed are appropriate</p> <p>Selection of tools and spare gear is appropriate</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintenance and repair of shipboard machinery and equipment (continued)	<p>Maintenance and repair, such as dismantling, adjustment and reassembling of machinery and equipment</p> <p>The use of appropriate specialized tools and measuring instruments</p> <p>Design characteristics and selection of materials in construction of equipment</p> <p>Interpretation of machinery drawings and handbooks</p> <p>The interpretation of piping, hydraulic and pneumatic diagrams</p>	.4 approved training ship experience	<p>Dismantling, inspecting, repairing and reassembling equipment is in accordance with manuals and good practice</p> <p>Re-commissioning and performance testing is in accordance with manuals and good practice</p> <p>Selection of materials and parts is appropriate</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ensure compliance with pollution-prevention requirements	<p><i>Prevention of pollution of the marine environment</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Anti-pollution procedures and all associated equipment</p> <p>Importance of proactive measures to protect the marine environment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved training</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring shipboard operations and ensuring compliance with MARPOL requirements are fully observed</p> <p>Actions to ensure that a positive environmental reputation is maintained</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Maintain seaworthiness of the ship</p>	<p><i>Ship stability</i></p> <p>Working knowledge and application of stability, trim and stress tables, diagrams and stress-calculating equipment</p> <p>Understanding of the fundamentals of watertight integrity</p> <p>Understanding of fundamental actions to be taken in the event of partial loss of intact buoyancy</p> <p><i>Ship construction</i></p> <p>General knowledge of the principal structural members of a ship and the proper names for the various parts</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The stability conditions comply with the IMO intact stability criteria under all conditions of loading</p> <p>Actions to ensure and maintain the watertight integrity of the ship are in accordance with accepted practice</p>
<p>Prevent, control and fight fires on board</p>	<p><i>Fire prevention and fire-fighting appliances</i></p> <p>Ability to organize fire drills</p> <p>Knowledge of classes and chemistry of fire</p> <p>Knowledge of fire-fighting systems</p> <p>Action to be taken in the event of fire, including fires involving oil systems</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved fire-fighting training and experience as set out in section A-VI/3, paragraphs 1 to 3</p>	<p>The type and scale of the problem is promptly identified and initial actions conform with the emergency procedure and contingency plans for the ship</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The order of priority, and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board, are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate life-saving appliances	<i>Life-saving</i> Ability to organize abandon ship drills and knowledge of the operation of survival craft and rescue boats, their launching appliances and arrangements, and their equipment, including radio life-saving appliances, satellite EPIRBs, SARTs, immersion suits and thermal protective aids	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/2, paragraphs 1 to 4	Actions in responding to abandon ship and survival situations are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions and comply with accepted safety practices and standards
Apply medical first aid on board ship	<i>Medical aid</i> Practical application of medical guides and advice by radio, including the ability to take effective action based on such knowledge in the case of accidents or illnesses that are likely to occur on board ship	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training as set out in section A-VI/4, paragraphs 1 to 3	Identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries or conditions is prompt and treatment minimizes immediate threat to life
Monitor compliance with legislative requirements	Basic working knowledge of the relevant IMO conventions concerning safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment	Assessment of evidence obtained from examination or approved training	Legislative requirements relating to safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment are correctly identified
Application of leadership and teamworking skills	Working knowledge of shipboard personnel management and training  A knowledge of related international maritime conventions and recommendations, and national legislation  Ability to apply task and workload management, including:  .1 planning and co-ordination  .2 personnel assignment  .3 time and resource constraints  .4 prioritization	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved training  .2 approved in-service experience  .3 practical demonstration	The crew are allocated duties and informed of expected standards of work and behaviour in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned  Training objectives and activities are based on assessment of current competence and capabilities and operational requirements.  Operations are demonstrated to be in accordance with applicable rules

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Application of leadership and teamworking skills (continued)</p>	<p>Knowledge and ability to apply effective resource management:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication on board and ashore</li> <li>.3 decisions reflect consideration of team experiences</li> <li>.4 assertiveness and leadership, including motivation</li> <li>.5 obtaining and maintaining situational awareness</li> </ol> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply decision-making techniques:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 Situation and risk assessment</li> <li>.2 Identify and consider generated options</li> <li>.3 Selecting course of action</li> <li>.4 Evaluation of outcome effectiveness</li> </ol>		<p>Operations are planned and resources are allocated as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p> <p>Effective leadership behaviours are demonstrated</p> <p>Necessary team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted vessel and operational status and external environment</p> <p>Decisions are most effective for the situation</p>
<p>Contribute to the safety of personnel and ship</p>	<p>Knowledge of personal survival techniques</p> <p>Knowledge of fire prevention and ability to fight and extinguish fires</p> <p>Knowledge of elementary first aid</p> <p>Knowledge of personal safety and social responsibilities</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/1, paragraph 2</p>	<p>Appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>Procedures and safe working practices designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Procedures designed to safeguard the environment are observed at all times</p> <p>Initial and follow-up actions on becoming aware of an emergency conform with established emergency response procedures</p>

## **Section A-III/2**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 3,000 kW propulsion power or more*

### **Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for certification as chief engineer officer and second engineer officer of seagoing ships powered by main propulsion machinery of 3,000 kW power or more shall be required to demonstrate ability to undertake, at the management level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-III/2.

2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-III/2. This incorporates, expands and extends in depth the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-III/1 for officers in charge of an engineering watch.

3 Bearing in mind that a second engineer officer shall be in a position to assume the responsibilities of the chief engineer officer at any time, assessment in these subjects shall be designed to test the candidate's ability to assimilate all available information that affects the safe operation of the ship's machinery and the protection of the marine environment.

4 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-III/2 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to serve in the capacity of chief engineer officer or second engineer officer.\*

5 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.

6 The Administration may omit knowledge requirements for types of propulsion machinery other than those machinery installations for which the certificate to be awarded shall be valid. A certificate awarded on such a basis shall not be valid for any category of machinery installation which has been omitted until the engineer officer proves to be competent in these knowledge requirements. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

7 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/2.

### **Near-coastal voyages**

8 The level of knowledge, understanding and proficiency required under the different sections listed in column 2 of table A-III/2 may be varied for **engineer** officers of ships powered by main propulsion machinery with limited propulsion power engaged on near-coastal voyages, as considered necessary, bearing in mind the effect on the safety of all ships which may be operating in the same waters. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

---

\* **The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.**

*Table A-III/2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for chief engineer officers  
and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery  
of 3,000 kW propulsion power or more**

**Function: Marine engineering at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manage the operation of propulsion plant machinery	<p>Design features, and operative mechanism of the following machinery and associated auxiliaries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 marine diesel engine</li> <li>.2 marine steam turbine</li> <li>.3 marine gas turbine</li> <li>.4 marine steam boiler</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</li> <li>.4 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul>	<p>Explanation and understanding of design features and operating mechanisms are appropriate</p>
Plan and schedule operations	<p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>Thermodynamics and heat transmission</p> <p>Mechanics and hydromechanics</p> <p>Propulsive characteristics of diesel engines, steam and gas turbines, including speed, output and fuel consumption</p> <p>Heat cycle, thermal efficiency and heat balance of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 marine diesel engine</li> <li>.2 marine steam turbine</li> <li>.3 marine gas turbine</li> <li>.4 marine steam boiler</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ul>	<p>The planning and preparation of operations is suited to the design parameters of the power installation and to the requirements of the voyage</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Plan and schedule operations (continued)	Refrigerators and refrigeration cycle  Physical and chemical properties of fuels and lubricants  Technology of materials  Naval architecture and ship construction, including damage control		
Operation, surveillance, performance assessment and maintaining safety of propulsion plant and auxiliary machinery	<i>Practical knowledge</i>  Start up and shut down main propulsion and auxiliary machinery, including associated systems  Operating limits of propulsion plant  The efficient operation, surveillance, performance assessment and maintaining safety of propulsion plant and auxiliary machinery  Functions and mechanism of automatic control for main engine  Functions and mechanism of automatic control for auxiliary machinery including but not limited to:  .1 generator distribution systems  .2 steam boilers  .3 oil purifier  .4 refrigeration system  .5 pumping and piping systems  .6 steering gear system  .7 cargo-handling equipment and deck machinery	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved training ship experience  .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate  .4 approved laboratory equipment training	The methods of preparing for the start-up and of making available fuels, lubricants, cooling water and air are the most appropriate  Checks of pressures, temperatures and revolutions during the start-up and warm-up period are in accordance with technical specifications and agreed work plans  Surveillance of main propulsion plant and auxiliary systems is sufficient to maintain safe operating conditions  The methods of preparing the shutdown and of supervising the cooling down of the engine are the most appropriate  The methods of measuring the load capacity of the engines are in accordance with technical specifications  Performance is checked against bridge orders  Performance levels are in accordance with technical specifications

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manage fuel, lubrication and ballast operations	Operation and maintenance of machinery, including pumps and piping systems	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ul>	Fuel and ballast operations meet operational requirements and are carried out so as to prevent pollution of the marine environment

**Function: Electrical, electronic and control engineering at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manage operation of electrical and electronic control equipment	<p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>Marine electrotechnology, electronics, power electronics, automatic control engineering and safety devices</p> <p>Design features and system configurations of automatic control equipment and safety devices for the following:</p> <p>.1 main engine</p> <p>.2 generator and distribution system</p> <p>.3 steam boiler</p> <p>Design features and system configurations of operational control equipment for electrical motors</p> <p>Design features of high-voltage installations</p> <p>Features of hydraulic and pneumatic control equipment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Operation of equipment and system is in accordance with operating manuals</p> <p>Performance levels are in accordance with technical specifications</p>
Manage troubleshooting restoration of electrical and electronic control equipment to operating condition	<p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Troubleshooting of electrical and electronic control equipment</p> <p>Function test of electrical, electronic control equipment and safety devices</p> <p>Troubleshooting of monitoring systems</p> <p>Software version control</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Maintenance activities are correctly planned in accordance with technical, legislative, safety and procedural specifications</p> <p>Inspection, testing and troubleshooting of equipment are appropriate</p>

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Manage safe and effective maintenance and repair procedures	<p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>Marine engineering practice</p> <p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Manage safe and effective maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Planning maintenance, including statutory and class verifications</p> <p>Planning repairs</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved workshop training</p>	<p>Maintenance activities are correctly planned and carried out in accordance with technical, legislative, safety and procedural specifications</p> <p>Appropriate plans, specifications, materials and equipment are available for maintenance and repair</p> <p>Action taken leads to the restoration of plant by the most suitable method</p>
Detect and identify the cause of machinery malfunctions and correct faults	<p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Detection of machinery malfunction, location of faults and action to prevent damage</p> <p>Inspection and adjustment of equipment</p> <p>Non-destructive examination</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The methods of comparing actual operating conditions are in accordance with recommended practices and procedures</p> <p>Actions and decisions are in accordance with recommended operating specifications and limitations</p>
Ensure safe working practices	<p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Safe working practices</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Working practices are in accordance with legislative requirements, codes of practice, permits to work and environmental concerns</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the management level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Control trim, stability and stress	<p>Understanding of fundamental principles of ship construction and the theories and factors affecting trim and stability and measures necessary to preserve trim and stability</p> <p>Knowledge of the effect on trim and stability of a ship in the event of damage to and consequent flooding of a compartment and countermeasures to be taken</p> <p>Knowledge of IMO recommendations concerning ship stability</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>Stability and stress conditions are maintained within safety limits at all times</p>
Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment	<p>Knowledge of relevant international maritime law embodied in international agreements and conventions</p> <p>Regard shall be paid especially to the following subjects:</p> <p>.1 certificates and other documents required to be carried on board ships by international conventions, how they may be obtained and the period of their legal validity</p> <p>.2 responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention on Load Lines</p> <p>.3 responsibilities under the relevant requirements of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring operations and maintenance comply with legislative requirements</p> <p>Potential non-compliance is promptly and fully identified</p> <p>Requirements for renewal and extension of certificates ensure continued validity of survey items and equipment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements and measures to ensure safety of life at sea and protection of the marine environment (continued)</p>	<p>.4 responsibilities under the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships</p> <p>.5 maritime declarations of health and the requirements of the International Health Regulations</p> <p>.6 responsibilities under international instruments affecting the safety of the ships, passengers, crew or cargo</p> <p>.7 methods and aids to prevent pollution of the environment by ships</p> <p>.8 knowledge of national legislation for implementing international agreements and conventions</p>		
<p>Maintain safety and security of the vessel, crew and passengers and the operational condition of life-saving, fire-fighting and other safety systems</p>	<p>A thorough knowledge of life-saving appliance regulations (International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea)</p> <p>Organization of fire and abandon ship drills</p> <p>Maintenance of operational condition of life-saving, fire-fighting and other safety systems</p> <p>Actions to be taken to protect and safeguard all persons on board in emergencies</p> <p>Actions to limit damage and salve the ship following fire, explosion, collision or grounding</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction and approved in-service training and experience</p>	<p>Procedures for monitoring fire-detection and safety systems ensure that all alarms are detected promptly and acted upon in accordance with established emergency procedures</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Develop emergency and damage control plans and handle emergency situations	<p>Ship construction, including damage control</p> <p>Methods and aids for fire prevention, detection and extinction</p> <p>Functions and use of life-saving appliances</p>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from approved in-service training and experience	Emergency procedures are in accordance with the established plans for emergency situations
Use leadership and managerial skills	<p>Knowledge of shipboard personnel management and training</p> <p>A knowledge of international maritime conventions and recommendations, and related national legislation</p> <p>Ability to apply task and workload management, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 planning and coordination</li> <li>.2 personnel assignment</li> <li>.3 time and resource constraints</li> <li>.4 prioritization</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply effective resource management:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 allocation, assignment, and prioritization of resources</li> <li>.2 effective communication on board and ashore</li> <li>.3 decisions reflect consideration of team experience</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved training</li> <li>.2 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> </ul>	<p>The crew are allocated duties and informed of expected standards of work and behaviour in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned</p> <p>Training objectives and activities are based on assessment of current competence and capabilities and operational requirements</p> <p>Operations are demonstrated to be in accordance with applicable rules</p> <p>Operations are planned and resources are allocated as needed in correct priority to perform necessary tasks</p> <p>Communication is clearly and unambiguously given and received</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Use leadership and managerial skills (continued)</p>	<p>.4 assertiveness and leadership, including motivation</p> <p>.5 obtaining and maintaining situation awareness</p> <p>Knowledge and ability to apply decision-making techniques:</p> <p>.1 situation and risk assessment</p> <p>.2 identify and generate options</p> <p>.3 select course of action</p> <p>.4 evaluation of outcome effectiveness</p> <p>Development, implementation, and oversight of standard operating procedures</p>		<p>Effective leadership behaviours are demonstrated</p> <p>Necessary team member(s) share accurate understanding of current and predicted vessel and operational status and external environment</p> <p>Decisions are most effective for the situation</p> <p>Operations are demonstrated to be effective and in accordance with applicable rules</p>

### **Section A-III/3**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of chief engineer officers and second engineer officers on ships powered by main propulsion machinery of between 750 kW and 3,000 kW propulsion power*

#### **Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for certification as chief engineer officer and second engineer officer of seagoing ships powered by main propulsion machinery of between 750 kW and 3,000 kW power shall be required to demonstrate ability to undertake, at management level, the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-III/2.

2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-III/2. This incorporates, expands and extends in depth the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-III/1 for officers in charge of an engineering watch in a manned engine-room or designated duty engineers in a periodically unmanned engine-room.

3 Bearing in mind that a second engineer officer shall be in a position to assume the responsibilities of the chief engineer officer at any time, assessment in these subjects shall be designed to test the candidate's ability to assimilate all available information that affects the safe operation of the ship's machinery and the protection of the marine environment.

4 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-III/2 may be lowered but shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to serve in the capacity of chief engineer officer or second engineer officer at the range of propulsion power specified in this section.

5 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take into account the relevant requirements of this part and the guidance given in part B of this Code.

6 The Administration may omit knowledge requirements for types of propulsion machinery other than those machinery installations for which the certificate to be awarded shall be valid. A certificate awarded on such a basis shall not be valid for any category of machinery installation which has been omitted until the engineer officer proves to be competent in these **knowledge requirements**. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

7 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/2.

#### **Near-coastal voyages**

8 The level of knowledge, understanding and proficiency required under the different sections listed in column 2 of table A-III/2 and the requirements of paragraphs 2.1.1 and 2.1.2 of regulation III/3 may be varied for **engineer officers of ships powered by main propulsion machinery of less than 3,000 kW main propulsion power** engaged on near-coastal voyages, as considered necessary, bearing in mind the effect on the safety of all ships which may be operating in the same waters. Any such limitation shall be stated on the certificate and in the endorsement.

## **Section A-III/4**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of ratings forming part of a watch in a manned engine-room or designated to perform duties in a periodically unmanned engine-room*

### **Standard of competence**

- 1 Every rating forming part of an engine-room watch on a seagoing ship shall be required to demonstrate the competence to perform the marine engineering function at the support level, as specified in column 1 of table A-III/4.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required of ratings forming part of an engine-room watch is listed in column 2 of table A-III/4.
- 3 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence specified in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/4. The reference to “practical test” in column 3 may include approved shore-based training in which the students undergo practical testing.
- 4 Where there are no tables of competence for the support level with respect to certain functions, it remains the responsibility of the Administration to determine the appropriate training, assessment and certification requirements to be applied to personnel designated to perform those functions at the support level.

*Table A-III/4*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for ratings forming part  
 of an engineering watch**

**Function: Marine engineering at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Carry out a watch routine appropriate to the duties of a rating forming part of an engine-room watch</p> <p>Understand orders and be understood in matters relevant to watchkeeping duties</p>	<p>Terms used in machinery spaces and names of machinery and equipment</p> <p>Engine-room watchkeeping procedures</p> <p>Safe working practices as related to engine-room operations</p> <p>Basic environmental protection procedures</p> <p>Use of appropriate internal communication system</p> <p>Engine-room alarm systems and ability to distinguish between the various alarms, with special reference to fire-extinguishing gas alarms</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience;</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience; or</p> <p>.3 practical test</p>	<p>Communications are clear and concise and advice or clarification is sought from the officer of the watch where watch information or instructions are not clearly understood</p> <p>Maintenance, handover and relief of the watch is in conformity with accepted principles and procedures</p>
<p>For keeping a boiler watch:</p> <p>Maintain the correct water levels and steam pressures</p>	<p>Safe operation of boilers</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience;</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience;</p> <p>.3 practical test; or</p> <p>.4 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p>	<p>Assessment of boiler condition is accurate and based on relevant information available from local and remote indicators and physical inspections</p> <p>The sequence and timing of adjustments maintains safety and optimum efficiency</p>

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Operate emergency equipment and apply emergency procedures	<p>Knowledge of emergency duties</p> <p>Escape routes from machinery spaces</p> <p>Familiarity with the location and use of fire-fighting equipment in the machinery spaces</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from demonstration and approved in-service experience or approved training ship experience	<p>Initial action on becoming aware of an emergency or abnormal situation conforms with established procedures</p> <p>Communications are clear and concise at all times and orders are acknowledged in a seamanlike manner</p>

**Section A-III/5**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of ratings as able seafarer engine in a manned engine-room or designated to perform duties in a periodically unmanned engine-room*

**Standard of competence**

- 1 Every able seafarer engine serving on a seagoing ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW propulsion power or more shall be required to demonstrate the competence to perform the functions at the support level, as specified in column 1 of table A-III/5.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required of an able seafarer engine serving on a seagoing ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW propulsion power or more is listed in column 2 of table A-III/5.
- 3 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence specified in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/5.

Table A-III/5

**Specification of minimum standards of competence for ratings as able seafarer engine in a manned engine-room or designated to perform duties in a periodically unmanned engine-room**

**Function: Marine engineering at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to a safe engineering watch	<p>Ability to understand orders and to communicate with the officer of the watch in matters relevant to watchkeeping duties</p> <p>Procedures for the relief, maintenance and handover of a watch</p> <p>Information required to maintain a safe watch</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from in-service experience or practical test	<p>Communications are clear and concise</p> <p>Maintenance, handover and relief of the watch is in conformity with acceptable practices and procedures</p>
Contribute to the monitoring and controlling of an engine-room watch	<p>Basic knowledge of the function and operation of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery</p> <p>Basic understanding of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery control pressures, temperatures and levels</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience;</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience; or</p> <p>.3 practical test</p>	<p>The frequency and extent of monitoring of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery conforms with accepted principles and procedures</p> <p>Deviations from the norm are identified</p> <p>Unsafe conditions or potential hazards are promptly recognized, reported and rectified before work continues</p>
Contribute to fuelling and oil transfer operations	<p>Knowledge of the function and operation of fuel system and oil transfer operations, including:</p> <p>.1 preparations for fuelling and transfer operations</p> <p>.2 procedures for connecting and disconnecting fuelling and transfer hoses</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 practical training</p> <p>.3 examination</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	<p>Transfer operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions</p> <p>The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful liquids complies with established safety practices</p> <p>Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to fuelling and oil transfer operations (continued)	.3 procedures relating to incidents that may arise during fuelling or transferring operation  .4 securing from fuelling and transfer operations  .5 ability to correctly measure and report tank levels	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration	
Contribute to bilge and ballast operations	Knowledge of the safe function, operation and maintenance of the bilge and ballast systems, including:  .1 reporting incidents associated with transfer operations  .2 ability to correctly measure and report tank levels	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 practical training  .3 examination  .4 approved training ship experience  Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration	Operations and maintenance are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions and pollution of the marine environment is avoided  Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful
Contribute to the operation of equipment and machinery	Safe operation of equipment, including:  .1 valves and pumps  .2 hoists and lifting equipment  .3 hatches, watertight doors, ports and related equipment  Ability to use and understand basic crane, winch and hoist signals	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 practical training  .3 examination  .4 approved training ship experience  Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration	Operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions  Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful

**Function: Electrical, electronic and control engineering at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Safe use of electrical equipment	<p>Safe use and operation of electrical equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 safety precautions before commencing work or repair</li> <li>.2 isolation procedures</li> <li>.3 emergency procedures</li> <li>.4 different voltages on board</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge of the causes of electric shock and precautions to be observed to prevent shock</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Recognizes and reports electrical hazards and unsafe equipment</p> <p>Understands safe voltages for hand-held equipment</p> <p>Understands risks associated with high-voltage equipment and onboard work</p>

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to shipboard maintenance and repair	<p>Knowledge of surface preparation techniques</p> <p>Ability to use painting, lubrication and cleaning materials and equipment</p> <p>Knowledge of safe disposal of waste materials</p> <p>Ability to understand and execute routine maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Understanding manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration</p> <p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Maintenance activities are carried out in accordance with technical, safety and procedural specifications</p> <p>Selection and use of equipment and tools is appropriate</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to shipboard maintenance and repair (continued)	<p>Knowledge of the application, maintenance and use of hand and power tools and measuring instruments and machine tools</p> <p>Knowledge of metalwork</p>		

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the handling of stores	Knowledge of procedures for safe handling, stowage and securing of stores	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 practical training</p> <p>.3 examination</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	<p>Stores operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions</p> <p>The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful stores complies with established safety practices</p> <p>Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful</p>
Apply precautions and contribute to the prevention of pollution of the marine environment	<p>Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Knowledge of use and operation of anti-pollution equipment</p> <p>Knowledge of approved methods for disposal of marine pollutants</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 practical training</p> <p>.3 examination</p> <p>.4 approved training ship experience</p>	Procedures designed to safeguard the marine environment are observed at all times

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Apply occupational health and safety procedures	<p>Working knowledge of safe working practices and personal shipboard safety, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 electrical safety</li> <li>.2 lockout/tag-out</li> <li>.3 mechanical safety</li> <li>.4 permit to work systems</li> <li>.5 working aloft</li> <li>.6 working in enclosed spaces</li> <li>.7 lifting techniques and methods of preventing back injury</li> <li>.8 chemical and biohazard safety</li> <li>.9 personal safety equipment</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used at all times</p>

## **Section A-III/6**

### *Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of electro-technical officer*

#### **Training**

1 The education and training required by paragraph 2.3 of regulation III/6 shall include training in electronic and electrical workshop skills relevant to the duties of electro-technical officer.

#### **Onboard training**

2 Every candidate for certification as electro-technical officer shall follow an approved programme of onboard training which:

- .1 ensures that, during the required period of seagoing service, the candidate receives systematic practical training and experience in the tasks, duties and responsibilities of an electro-technical officer;
- .2 is closely supervised and monitored by qualified and certificated officers aboard the ships in which the approved seagoing service is performed; and
- .3 is adequately documented in a training record book.

#### **Standard of competence**

3 Every candidate for certification as electro-technical officer shall be required to demonstrate the ability to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-III/6.

4 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification is listed in column 2 of table A-III/6 and it shall take into account the guidance given in part B of this Code.

5 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/6.

Table A-III/6

Specification of minimum standards of competence for electro-technical officers

Function: Electrical, electronic and control engineering at the operational level

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Monitor the operation of electrical, electronic and control systems	<p>Basic understanding of the operation of mechanical engineering systems, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 prime movers, including main propulsion plant</li> <li>.2 engine-room auxiliary machineries</li> <li>.3 steering systems</li> <li>.4 cargo handling systems</li> <li>.5 deck machineries</li> <li>.6 hotel systems</li> </ol> <p>Basic knowledge of heat transmission, mechanics and hydromechanics</p> <p><i>Knowledge of:</i></p> <p>Electro-technology and electrical machines theory</p> <p>Fundamentals of electronics and power electronics</p> <p>Electrical power distribution boards and electrical equipment</p> <p>Fundamentals of automation, automatic control systems and technology</p> <p>Instrumentation, alarm and monitoring systems</p> <p>Electrical drives</p> <p>Technology of electrical materials</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ol>	<p>Operation of equipment and system is in accordance with operating manuals</p> <p>Performance levels are in accordance with technical specifications</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Monitor the operation of electrical, electronic and control systems (continued)	Electro-hydraulic and electro-pneumatic control systems  Appreciation of the hazards and precautions required for the operation of power systems above 1,000 volts		
Monitor the operation of automatic control systems of propulsion and auxiliary machinery	Preparation of control systems of propulsion and auxiliary machinery for operation	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved training ship experience  .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate  .4 approved laboratory equipment training	Surveillance of main propulsion plant and auxiliary systems is sufficient to maintain safe operation condition
Operate generators	Coupling, load sharing and changing over generators	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience  .2 approved training ship experience  .3 approved simulator training, where appropriate  .4 approved laboratory equipment training	Operations are planned and carried out in accordance with established rules and procedures to ensure safety of operations

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate and maintain power systems in excess of 1,000 volts	<p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>High-voltage technology</p> <p>Safety precautions and procedures</p> <p>Electrical propulsion of the ships' electrical motors and control systems</p> <p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Safe operation and maintenance of high-voltage systems, including knowledge of the special technical type of high-voltage systems and the danger resulting from operational voltage of more than 1,000 volts</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Operations are planned and carried out in accordance with operating manuals, established rules and procedures to ensure safety of operations</p>
Operate computers and computer networks on ships	<p>Understanding of:</p> <p>.1 main features of data processing</p> <p>.2 construction and use of computer networks on ships</p> <p>.3 bridge-based, engine-room-based and commercial computer use</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>Computer networks and computers are correctly checked and handled</p>
Use hand tools, electrical and electronic measurement equipment for fault finding, maintenance and repair operations	<p>Safety requirements for working on shipboard electrical systems</p> <p>Knowledge of the causes of electric shock and precautions to be observed to prevent shock</p> <p>Construction and operational characteristics of shipboard AC and DC systems and equipment</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved workshop skills training</p> <p>.2 approved practical experience and tests</p>	<p>Implementation of safety procedures is satisfactory</p> <p>Recognizes and reports electrical hazards and unsafe equipment</p> <p>Selection and use of test equipment is appropriate and interpretation of results is accurate</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Use hand tools, electrical and electronic measurement equipment for fault finding, maintenance and repair operations <i>(continued)</i>	Construction and operation of electrical test and measuring equipment  Application of safe working practices		Selection of procedures for the conduct of repair and maintenance is in accordance with manuals and good practice  Commissioning and performance testing of equipment and systems brought back to service after repair is in accordance with manuals and good practice
Use English in written and oral form	Adequate knowledge of the English language to enable the officer to use engineering publications and to perform the officer's duties	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical instructions	English language publications relevant to the officer's duties are correctly interpreted  Communications are clear and understood

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain and repair automation and control systems of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery	<p>Appropriate electrical and mechanical knowledge and skills</p> <p><i>Safety and emergency procedures</i></p> <p>Safe isolation of equipment and associated systems required before personnel are permitted to work on such plant or equipment</p> <p>Practical knowledge for the testing, maintenance, fault finding and repair</p> <p>Test, detect faults and maintain and restore electrical and electronic control equipment to operating condition</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</p> <p>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</p>	<p>The effect of malfunctions on associated plant and systems is accurately identified, ship's technical drawings are correctly interpreted, measuring and calibrating instruments are correctly used and actions taken are justified</p> <p>Isolation, dismantling and reassembly of plant and equipment are in accordance with manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions and legislative and safety specifications. Action taken leads to the restoration of automation and control systems by the method most suitable and appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>
Maintain and repair bridge navigation equipment and ship communication systems	<p>Knowledge of the principles and maintenance procedures of navigation equipment, internal and external communication systems</p> <p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>Electrical and electronic systems operating in flammable areas</p> <p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Carrying out safe maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Detection of machinery malfunction, location of faults and action to prevent damage</p>		<p>The effect of malfunctions on associated plant and systems is accurately identified, ship's technical drawings are correctly interpreted, measuring and calibrating instruments are correctly used and actions taken are justified</p> <p>Isolation, dismantling and reassembly of plant and equipment are in accordance with manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions, legislative and safety specifications. Action taken leads to the restoration of bridge navigation equipment and ship communication systems by the method most suitable and appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain and repair electrical, electronic and control systems of deck machinery and cargo-handling equipment	<p>Appropriate electrical and mechanical knowledge and skills</p> <p><i>Safety and emergency procedures</i></p> <p>Safe isolation of equipment and associated systems required before personnel are permitted to work on such plant or equipment</p> <p>Practical knowledge for the testing, maintenance, fault finding and repair</p> <p>Test, detect faults and maintain and restore electrical and electronic control equipment to operating condition</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ol>	<p>The effect of malfunctions on associated plant and systems is accurately identified, ship's technical drawings are correctly interpreted, measuring and calibrating instruments are correctly used and actions taken are justified</p> <p>Isolation, dismantling and reassembly of plant and equipment are in accordance with manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions, legislative and safety specifications. Action taken leads to the restoration of deck machinery and cargo-handling equipment by the method most suitable and appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>
Maintain and repair control and safety systems of hotel equipment	<p><i>Theoretical knowledge</i></p> <p>Electrical and electronic systems operating in flammable areas</p> <p><i>Practical knowledge</i></p> <p>Carrying out safe maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Detection of machinery malfunction, location of faults and action to prevent damage</p>		<p>The effect of malfunctions on associated plant and systems is accurately identified, ship's technical drawings are correctly interpreted, measuring and calibrating instruments are correctly used and actions taken are justified</p> <p>Isolation, dismantling and reassembly of plant and equipment are in accordance with manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions, legislative and safety specifications. Action taken leads to the restoration of control and safety systems of hotel equipment by the method most suitable and appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p>

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Organize and manage subordinate crew	<p>A knowledge of personnel management, organization and training on board ships</p> <p>A knowledge of international maritime conventions and recommendations, and related national legislation</p>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from approved in-service training and experience	<p>The crew are allocated duties and informed of expected standards of work and behaviour in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned</p> <p>Training objectives and activities are based on an assessment of current competence and capabilities and operational requirements</p>
Ensure compliance with pollution-prevention requirements	<p><i>Prevention of pollution of the marine environment</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Anti-pollution procedures and all associated equipment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p>	Procedures for monitoring shipboard operations and ensuring compliance with MARPOL requirements are fully observed
Prevent, control and fight fire on board	<p><i>Fire prevention and fire-fighting appliances</i></p> <p>Knowledge of fire prevention</p> <p>Ability to organize fire drills</p> <p>Knowledge of fire-fighting systems</p> <p>Action to be taken in the event of fire, including fires involving oil systems</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved fire-fighting training and experience as set out in section A-VI/3, paragraphs 1 to 3	<p>The type and scale of the problem is promptly identified and initial actions conform with the emergency procedure and contingency plans for the ship</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The order of priority, and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board, are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Operate life-saving appliances	<p>Ability to organize abandon ship drills and knowledge of the operation of survival craft and rescue boats, their launching appliances and arrangements, and their equipment, including radio life-saving appliances, satellite EPIRBs, SARTs, immersion suits and thermal protective aids</p> <p>Knowledge of survival at sea techniques</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training and experience as set out in section A-VI/2, paragraphs 1 to 4	Actions in responding to abandon ship and survival situations are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions and comply with accepted safety practices and standards
Apply medical first aid on board ship	Practical application of medical guides and advice by radio, including the ability to take effective action based on such knowledge in the case of accidents or illnesses that are likely to occur on board ship	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training as set out in section A-VI/4, paragraphs 1 to 3	Identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries or conditions is prompt and treatment minimizes immediate threat to life

**Section A-III/7**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of electro-technical rating*

- 1 Every electro-technical rating serving on a seagoing ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW propulsion power or more shall be required to demonstrate the competence to perform the functions at the support level, as specified in column 1 of table A-III/7.
- 2 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required of an electro-technical rating serving on a seagoing ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW propulsion power or more is listed in column 2 of table A-III/7.
- 3 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence specified in columns 3 and 4 of table A-III/7.

Table A-III/7

Specification of minimum standards of competence for electro-technical ratings

Function: Electrical, electronic and control engineering at the support level

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Safe use of electrical equipment	<p>Safe use and operation of electrical equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 safety precautions before commencing work or repair</li> <li>.2 isolation procedures</li> <li>.3 emergency procedures</li> <li>.4 different voltages on board</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge of the causes of electric shock and precautions to be observed to prevent shock</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Understands and follows safety instructions of electrical equipment and machinery</p> <p>Recognizes and reports electrical hazards and unsafe equipment</p> <p>Understands safe voltages for hand-held equipment</p> <p>Understands risks associated with high-voltage equipment and onboard work</p>
Contribute to monitoring the operation of electrical systems and machinery	<p>Basic knowledge of the operation of mechanical engineering systems, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 prime movers, including main propulsion plant</li> <li>.2 engine-room auxiliary machineries</li> <li>.3 steering systems</li> <li>.4 cargo-handling systems</li> <li>.5 deck machineries</li> <li>.6 hotel systems</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ul>	<p>Knowledge that ensures:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 operation of equipment and system is in accordance with operating manuals</li> <li>.2 performance levels are in accordance with technical specifications</li> </ul>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Contribute to monitoring the operation of electrical systems and machinery (continued)</p>	<p><i>Basic knowledge of:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 electro-technology and electrical machines theory</li> <li>.2 electrical power distribution boards and electrical equipment</li> <li>.3 fundamentals of automation, automatic control systems and technology</li> <li>.4 instrumentation, alarm and monitoring systems</li> <li>.5 electrical drives</li> <li>.6 electro-hydraulic and electro-pneumatic control systems</li> <li>.7 coupling, load sharing and changes in electrical configuration</li> </ul>		
<p>Use hand tools, electrical and electronic measurement equipment for fault finding, maintenance and repair operations</p>	<p>Safety requirements for working on shipboard electrical systems</p> <p>Application of safe working practices</p> <p><i>Basic knowledge of:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 construction and operational characteristics of shipboard AC and DC systems and equipment</li> <li>.2 use of measuring instruments, machine tools, and hand and power tools</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved workshop skills training</li> <li>.2 approved practical experience and tests</li> </ul>	<p>Implementation of safety procedures is satisfactory</p> <p>Selection and use of test equipment is appropriate and interpretation of results is accurate</p> <p>Selection of procedures for the conduct of repair and maintenance is in accordance with manuals and good practice</p>

**Function: Maintenance and repair at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to shipboard maintenance and repair	<p>Ability to use lubrication and cleaning materials and equipment</p> <p>Knowledge of safe disposal of waste materials</p> <p>Ability to understand and execute routine maintenance and repair procedures</p> <p>Understanding manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ol>	<p>Maintenance activities are carried out in accordance with technical, safety and procedural specifications</p> <p>Selection and use of equipment and tools is appropriate</p>
Contribute to the maintenance and repair of electrical systems and machinery on board	<p><i>Safety and emergency procedures</i></p> <p>Basic knowledge of electro-technical drawings and safe isolation of equipment and associated systems required before personnel are permitted to work on such plant or equipment</p> <p>Test, detect faults and maintain and restore electrical control equipment and machinery to operating condition</p> <p>Electrical and electronic equipment operating in flammable areas</p> <p>Basics of ship's fire-detection system</p> <p>Carrying out safe maintenance and repair procedures</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> <li>.4 approved laboratory equipment training</li> </ol>	<p>The effect of malfunctions on associated plant and systems is accurately identified, ship's technical drawings are correctly interpreted, measuring and calibrating instruments are correctly used and actions taken are justified</p> <p>Isolation, dismantling and reassembly of plant and equipment is in accordance with manufacturer's safety guidelines and shipboard instructions</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the maintenance and repair of electrical systems and machinery on board (continued)	Detection of machinery malfunction, location of faults and action to prevent damage  Maintenance and repair of lighting fixtures and supply systems		

**Function: Controlling the operation of the ship and care for persons on board at the support level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the handling of stores	Knowledge of procedures for safe handling, stowage and securing of stores	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: .1 approved in-service experience .2 practical training .3 examination .4 approved training ship experience	Stores stowage operations are carried out in accordance with established safety practices and equipment operating instructions  The handling of dangerous, hazardous and harmful stores complies with established safety practices  Communications within the operator's area of responsibility are consistently successful
Apply precautions and contribute to the prevention of pollution of the marine environment	Knowledge of the precautions to be taken to prevent pollution of the marine environment  Knowledge of use and operation of anti-pollution equipment/agents  Knowledge of approved methods for disposal of marine pollutants	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: .1 approved in-service experience .2 practical training .3 examination .4 approved training ship experience	Procedures designed to safeguard the marine environment are observed at all times

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Apply occupational health and safety procedures	Working knowledge of safe working practices and personal shipboard safety, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 electrical safety</li> <li>.2 lockout/tag-out</li> <li>.3 mechanical safety</li> <li>.4 permit to work systems</li> <li>.5 working aloft</li> <li>.6 working in enclosed spaces</li> <li>.7 lifting techniques and methods of preventing back injury</li> <li>.8 chemical and biohazard safety</li> <li>.9 personal safety equipment</li> </ol>	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 practical training</li> <li>.3 examination</li> <li>.4 approved training ship experience</li> </ol>	Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times  Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used at all times

## CHAPTER IV

### Standards regarding radio operators

#### Section A-IV/1

##### *Application*

(No provisions)

#### Section A-IV/2

##### *Mandatory minimum requirements for certification of GMDSS radio operators*

#### Standard of competence

1 The minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency required for certification of GMDSS radio operators shall be sufficient for radio operators to carry out their radio duties. The knowledge required for obtaining each type of certificate defined in the Radio Regulations shall be in accordance with those regulations. In addition, every candidate for certification of competency shall be required to demonstrate ability to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-IV/2.

2 The knowledge, understanding and proficiency for endorsement under the Convention of certificates issued under the provisions of the Radio Regulations are listed in column 2 of table A-IV/2.

3 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-IV/2 shall be sufficient for the candidate to carry out his duties\*.

4 Every candidate shall provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence through:

- .1 demonstration of competence to perform the tasks and duties and to assume responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-IV/2, in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of that table; and
- .2 examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved course of training based on the material set out in column 2 of table A-IV/2.

---

\*

The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

*Table A-IV/2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence for GMDSS radio operators**

**Function: Radiocommunications at the operational level**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Transmit and receive information using GMDSS subsystems and equipment and fulfilling the functional requirements of GMDSS	In addition to the requirements of the Radio Regulations, a knowledge of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 search and rescue radiocommunications, including procedures in the <b>International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue (IAMSAR) Manual</b></li> <li>.2 the means to prevent the transmission of false distress alerts and the procedures to mitigate the effects of such alerts</li> <li>.3 ship reporting systems</li> <li>.4 radio medical services</li> <li>.5 <b>use of the International Code of Signals and the IMO Standard Marine Communication Phrases</b></li> <li>.6 the English language, both written and spoken, for the communication of information relevant to safety of life at sea</li> </ol> <p><i>Note:</i> This requirement may be reduced in the case of the Restricted Radio Operator's Certificate</p>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of operational procedures, using: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved equipment</li> <li>.2 GMDSS communication simulator, where appropriate*</li> <li>.3 radiocommunication laboratory equipment</li> </ol>	Transmission and reception of communications comply with international regulations and procedures and are carried out efficiently and effectively <p>English language messages relevant to the safety of the ship and persons on board and protection of the marine environment are correctly handled</p>

\* See paragraph 72 of section B-I/12 of this Code.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Provide radio services in emergencies	<p>The provision of radio services in emergencies such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 abandon ship</li> <li>.2 fire on board ship</li> <li>.3 partial or full breakdown of radio installations</li> </ul> <p>Preventive measures for the safety of ship and personnel in connection with hazards related to radio equipment, including electrical and non-ionizing radiation hazards</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of operational procedures, using:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved equipment</li> <li>.2 GMDSS communication simulator, where appropriate*</li> <li>.3 radiocommunication laboratory equipment</li> </ul>	Response is carried out efficiently and effectively

---

\* See paragraph 72 of section B-I/12 of this Code.

## CHAPTER V

### Standards regarding special training requirements for personnel on certain types of ships

#### Section A-V/1-1

*Mandatory minimum requirements for the training and qualifications of masters, officers and ratings on oil and chemical tankers*

#### Standard of competence

1 Every candidate for certification in basic training for oil and chemical tanker cargo operations shall be required to:

- .1 demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-V/1-1-1; and
- .2 provide evidence of having achieved:
  - .2.1 the minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency listed in column 2 of table A-V/1-1-1, and
  - .2.2 the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/1-1-1.

2 Every candidate for certification in advanced training for oil tanker cargo operations shall be required to:

- .1 demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-V/1-1-2; and
- .2 provide evidence of having achieved:
  - .2.1 the minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency listed in column 2 of table A-V/1-1-2, and
  - .2.2 the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/1-1-2.

3 Every candidate for certification in advanced training for chemical tanker cargo operations shall be required to:

- .1 demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-V/1-1-3; and

- .2 provide evidence of having achieved:
  - .2.1 the minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency listed in column 2 of table A-V/1-1-3, and
  - .2.2 the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/1-1-3.

**Table A-V/1-1-1**  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in basic training for oil and chemical tanker cargo operations**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the safe cargo operation of oil and chemical tankers	<p>Basic knowledge of tankers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 types of oil and chemical tankers</li> <li>.2 general arrangement and construction</li> </ul> <p>Basic knowledge of cargo operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 piping systems and valves</li> <li>.2 cargo pumps</li> <li>.3 loading and unloading</li> <li>.4 tank cleaning, purging, gas-freeing and inerting</li> </ul> <p>Basic knowledge of the physical properties of oil and chemicals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 pressure and temperature, including vapour pressure/temperature relationship</li> <li>.2 types of electrostatic charge generation</li> <li>.3 chemical symbols</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and understanding of tanker safety culture and safety management</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Communications within the area of responsibility are clear and effective</p> <p>Cargo operations are carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to ensure safety of operations</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Take precautions to prevent hazards</p>	<p>Basic knowledge of the hazards associated with tanker operations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 health hazards</li> <li>.2 environmental hazards</li> <li>.3 reactivity hazards</li> <li>.4 corrosion hazards</li> <li>.5 explosion and flammability hazards</li> <li>.6 sources of ignition, including electrostatic hazards</li> <li>.7 toxicity hazards</li> <li>.8 vapour leaks and clouds</li> </ul> <p>Basic knowledge of hazard controls:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 inerting, water padding, drying agents and monitoring techniques</li> <li>.2 anti-static measures</li> <li>.3 ventilation</li> <li>.4 segregation</li> <li>.5 cargo inhibition</li> <li>.6 importance of cargo compatibility</li> <li>.7 atmospheric control</li> <li>.8 gas testing</li> </ul> <p>Understanding of information on a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Correctly identifies, on an MSDS, relevant cargo-related hazards to the vessel and to personnel, and takes the appropriate actions in accordance with established procedures</p> <p>Identification and actions on becoming aware of a hazardous situation conform to established procedures in line with best practice</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Apply occupational health and safety precautions and measures</p>	<p>Function and proper use of gas-measuring instruments and similar equipment</p> <p>Proper use of safety equipment and protective devices, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 breathing apparatus and tank-evacuating equipment</li> <li>.2 protective clothing and equipment</li> <li>.3 resuscitators</li> <li>.4 rescue and escape equipment</li> </ul> <p>Basic knowledge of safe working practices and procedures in accordance with legislation and industry guidelines and personal shipboard safety relevant to oil and chemical tankers, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 precautions to be taken when entering enclosed spaces</li> <li>.2 precautions to be taken before and during repair and maintenance work</li> <li>.3 safety measures for hot and cold work</li> <li>.4 electrical safety</li> <li>.5 ship/shore safety checklist</li> </ul> <p>Basic knowledge of first aid with reference to a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures for entry into enclosed spaces are observed.</p> <p>Procedures and safe working practices designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>First aid do's and don'ts</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Carry out fire-fighting operations	<p>Tanker fire response organization and action to be taken</p> <p>Fire hazards associated with cargo handling and transportation of hazardous and noxious liquids in bulk</p> <p>Fire-fighting agents used to extinguish oil and chemical fires</p> <p>Fixed fire-fighting foam system operations</p> <p>Portable fire-fighting foam operations</p> <p>Fixed dry chemical system operations</p> <p>Spill containment in relation to fire-fighting operations</p>	<p>Practical exercises and instruction conducted under approved and truly realistic training conditions (e.g., simulated shipboard conditions) and, whenever possible and practicable, in darkness</p>	<p>Initial actions and follow-up actions on becoming aware of fire on board conform with established practices and procedures</p> <p>Action taken on identifying muster signal is appropriate to the indicated emergency and complies with established procedures</p> <p>Clothing and equipment are appropriate to the nature of the fire-fighting operations</p> <p>The timing and sequence of individual actions are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>Extinguishment of fire is achieved using appropriate procedures, techniques and fire-fighting agents</p>
Respond to emergencies	<p>Basic knowledge of emergency procedures, including emergency shutdown</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	<p>The type and impact of the emergency is promptly identified and the response actions conform to the emergency procedures and contingency plans</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Take precautions to prevent pollution of the environment from the release of oil or chemicals</p>	<p>Basic knowledge of the effects of oil and chemical pollution on human and marine life</p> <p>Basic knowledge of shipboard procedures to prevent pollution</p> <p>Basic knowledge of measures to be taken in the event of spillage, including the need to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 report relevant information to the responsible persons</li> <li>.2 assist in implementing shipboard spill-containment procedures</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard the environment are observed at all times</p>

**Table A-V/1-1-2**  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in advanced training**  
**for oil tanker cargo operations**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations	<p><i>Design and characteristics of an oil tanker</i></p> <p>Knowledge of oil tanker design, systems and equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 general arrangement and construction</li> <li>.2 pumping arrangement and equipment</li> <li>.3 tank arrangement, pipeline system and tank venting arrangement</li> <li>.4 gauging systems and alarms</li> <li>.5 cargo heating systems</li> <li>.6 tank cleaning, gas-freeing and inerting systems</li> <li>.7 ballast system</li> <li>.8 cargo area venting and accommodation ventilation</li> <li>.9 slop arrangements</li> <li>.10 vapour recovery systems</li> <li>.11 cargo-related electrical and electronic control system</li> <li>.12 environmental protection equipment, including Oil Discharge Monitoring Equipment (ODME)</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Communications are clear, understood and successful</p> <p>Cargo operations are carried out in a safe manner, taking into account oil tanker designs, systems and equipment</p> <p>Cargo operations are planned, risk is managed and carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to ensure safety of operations and avoid pollution of the marine environment</p> <p>Potential non-compliance with cargo-operation-related procedures is promptly identified and rectified</p> <p>Proper loading, stowage and unloading of cargoes ensures that stability and stress conditions remain within safe limits at all times</p> <p>Actions taken and procedures followed are correctly applied and the appropriate shipboard cargo-related equipment is properly used</p> <p>Calibration and use of monitoring and gas-detection equipment comply with operational practices and procedures</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations (continued)</p>	<p>.13 tank coating</p> <p>.14 tank temperature and pressure control systems</p> <p>.15 fire-fighting systems</p> <p>Knowledge of pump theory and characteristics, including types of cargo pumps and their safe operation</p> <p>Proficiency in tanker safety culture and implementation of safety-management system</p> <p>Knowledge and understanding of monitoring and safety systems, including the emergency shutdown</p> <p><i>Loading, unloading, care and handling of cargo</i></p> <p>Ability to perform cargo measurements and calculations</p> <p>Knowledge of the effect of bulk liquid cargoes on trim, stability and structural integrity</p> <p>Knowledge and understanding of oil cargo-related operations, including:</p> <p>.1 loading and unloading plans</p> <p>.2 ballasting and deballasting</p> <p>.3 tank cleaning operations</p> <p>.4 inerting</p> <p>.5 gas-freeing</p>		<p>Procedures for monitoring and safety systems ensure that all alarms are detected promptly and acted upon in accordance with established emergency procedures</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations (continued)	<p>.6 ship-to-ship transfers</p> <p>.7 load on top</p> <p>.8 crude oil washing</p> <p>Development and application of cargo-related operation plans, procedures and checklists</p> <p>Ability to calibrate and use monitoring and gas-detection systems, instruments and equipment</p> <p>Ability to manage and supervise personnel with cargo-related responsibilities</p>		Personnel are allocated duties and informed of procedures and standards of work to be followed, in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned and in accordance with safe operational practices
Familiarity with physical and chemical properties of oil cargoes	<p>Knowledge and understanding of the physical and chemical properties of oil cargoes</p> <p>Understanding the information contained in a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training</p> <p>.4 approved training programme</p>	Effective use is made of information resources for identification of properties and characteristics of oil cargoes and related gases, and their impact on safety, the environment and vessel operation

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Take precautions to prevent hazards	<p>Knowledge and understanding of the hazards and control measures associated with oil tanker cargo operations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 toxicity</li> <li>.2 flammability and explosion</li> <li>.3 health hazards</li> <li>.4 inert gas composition</li> <li>.5 electrostatic hazards</li> </ul> <p>Knowledge and understanding of dangers of non-compliance with relevant rules/regulations</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Relevant cargo-related hazards to the vessel and to personnel associated with oil tanker cargo operations are correctly identified, and proper control measures are taken</p>
Apply occupational health and safety precautions	<p>Knowledge and understanding of safe working practices, including risk assessment and personal shipboard safety relevant to oil tankers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 precautions to be taken when entering enclosed spaces, including correct use of different types of breathing apparatus</li> <li>.2 precautions to be taken before and during repair and maintenance work</li> <li>.3 precautions for hot and cold work</li> <li>.4 precautions for electrical safety</li> <li>.5 use of appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>Working practices are in accordance with legislative requirements, codes of practice, permits to work and environmental concerns</p> <p>Correct use of breathing apparatus</p> <p>Procedures for entry into enclosed spaces are observed</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Respond to emergencies	<p>Knowledge and understanding of oil tanker emergency procedures, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 ship emergency response plans</li> <li>.2 cargo operations emergency shutdown</li> <li>.3 actions to be taken in the event of failure of systems or services essential to cargo</li> <li>.4 fire-fighting on oil tankers</li> <li>.5 enclosed space rescue</li> <li>.6 use of a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</li> </ul> <p>Actions to be taken following collision, grounding, or spillage</p> <p>Knowledge of medical first aid procedures on board oil tankers</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>The type and impact of the emergency is promptly identified and the response actions conform with established emergency procedures and contingency plans</p> <p>The order of priority, and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board, are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The identification of and actions taken in a medical emergency conform to current recognized first aid practice and international guidelines</p>
Take precautions to prevent pollution of the environment	<p>Understanding of procedures to prevent pollution of the atmosphere and the environment</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Operations are conducted in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to prevent pollution of the environment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements	Knowledge and understanding of relevant provisions of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL), as amended, and other relevant IMO instruments, industry guidelines and port regulations as commonly applied	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	The handling of cargoes complies with relevant IMO instruments and established industrial standards and codes of safe working practice

**Table A-V/1-1-3**  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in advanced training**  
**for chemical tanker cargo operations**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations	<p><i>Design and characteristics of a chemical tanker</i></p> <p>Knowledge of chemical tanker designs, systems, and equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 general arrangement and construction</li> <li>.2 pumping arrangement and equipment</li> <li>.3 tank construction and arrangement</li> <li>.4 pipeline and drainage systems</li> <li>.5 tank and cargo pipeline pressure and temperature control systems and alarms</li> <li>.6 gauging control systems and alarms</li> <li>.7 gas-detecting systems</li> <li>.8 cargo heating and cooling systems</li> <li>.9 tank cleaning systems</li> <li>.10 cargo tank environmental control systems</li> <li>.11 ballast systems</li> <li>.12 cargo area venting and accommodation ventilation</li> <li>.13 vapour return/recovery systems</li> <li>.14 fire-fighting systems</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Communications are clear, understood and successful</p> <p>Cargo operations are carried out in a safe manner, taking into account chemical tanker designs, systems and equipment</p> <p>Cargo operations are planned, risk is managed and carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to ensure safety of operations and avoid pollution of the marine environment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations  <i>(continued)</i></p>	<p>.15 tank, pipeline and fittings' material and coatings</p> <p>.16 slop management</p> <p>Knowledge of pump theory and characteristics, including types of cargo pumps and their safe operation</p> <p>Proficiency in tanker safety culture and implementation of safety management system</p> <p>Knowledge and understanding of monitoring and safety systems, including the emergency shutdown system</p> <p><i>Loading, unloading, care and handling of cargo</i></p> <p>Ability to perform cargo measurements and calculations</p> <p>Knowledge of the effect of bulk liquid cargoes on trim and stability and structural integrity</p> <p>Knowledge and understanding of chemical cargo-related operations, including:</p> <p>.1 loading and unloading plans</p> <p>.2 ballasting and deballasting</p> <p>.3 tank cleaning operations</p> <p>.4 tank atmosphere control</p>		<p> Proper loading, stowage and unloading of cargoes ensures that stability and stress conditions remain within safe limits at all times</p> <p>Potential non-compliance with cargo-related procedures is promptly identified and rectified</p> <p>Actions taken and procedures followed are correctly identified and appropriate shipboard cargo-related equipment is properly used</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations (continued)</p>	<p>.5 inerting</p> <p>.6 gas-freeing</p> <p>.7 ship-to-ship transfers</p> <p>.8 inhibition and stabilization requirements</p> <p>.9 heating and cooling requirements and consequences to adjacent cargoes</p> <p>.10 cargo compatibility and segregation</p> <p>.11 high-viscosity cargoes</p> <p>.12 cargo residue operations</p> <p>.13 operational tank entry</p> <p>Development and application of cargo-related operation plans, procedures and checklists</p> <p>Ability to calibrate and use monitoring and gas-detection systems, instruments and equipment</p> <p>Ability to manage and supervise personnel with cargo-related responsibilities</p>	<p></p> <p style="text-align: center;"></p>	<p>Calibration and use of monitoring and gas-detection equipment are consistent with safe operational practices and procedures</p> <p>Procedures for monitoring and safety systems ensure that all alarms are detected promptly and acted upon in accordance with established procedures</p> <p>Personnel are allocated duties and informed of procedures and standards of work to be followed, in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned and in accordance with safe operational practices</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Familiarity with physical and chemical properties of chemical cargoes	Knowledge and understanding of the chemical and the physical properties of noxious liquid substances, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 chemical cargoes categories (corrosive, toxic, flammable, explosive)</li> <li>.2 chemical groups and industrial usage</li> <li>.3 reactivity of cargoes</li> </ol> Understanding the information contained in a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	Effective use is made of information resources for identification of properties and characteristics of noxious liquid substances and related gases, and their impact on safety, environmental protection and vessel operation
Take precautions to prevent hazards	Knowledge and understanding of the hazards and control measures associated with chemical tanker cargo operations, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 flammability and explosion</li> <li>.2 toxicity</li> <li>.3 health hazards</li> <li>.4 inert gas composition</li> <li>.5 electrostatic hazards</li> <li>.6 reactivity</li> <li>.7 corrosivity</li> <li>.8 low-boiling-point cargoes</li> <li>.9 high-density cargoes</li> <li>.10 solidifying cargoes</li> <li>.11 polymerizing cargoes</li> </ol>	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	Relevant cargo-related hazards to the vessel and to personnel associated with chemical tanker cargo operations are correctly identified, and proper control measures are taken

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
	Knowledge and understanding of dangers of non-compliance with relevant rules/regulations		
Apply occupational health and safety precautions	<p>Knowledge and understanding of safe working practices, including risk assessment and personal shipboard safety relevant to chemical tankers:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 precautions to be taken when entering enclosed spaces, including correct use of different types of breathing apparatus</li> <li>.2 precautions to be taken before and during repair and maintenance work</li> <li>.3 precautions for hot and cold work</li> <li>.4 precautions for electrical safety</li> <li>.5 use of appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)</li> </ol>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>Working practices are in accordance with legislative requirements, codes of practice, permits to work and environmental concerns</p> <p>Correct use of breathing apparatus</p> <p>Procedures for entry into enclosed spaces are observed</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Respond to emergencies	<p>Knowledge and understanding of chemical tanker emergency procedures, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 ship emergency response plans</li> <li>.2 cargo operations emergency shutdown</li> <li>.3 actions to be taken in the event of failure of systems or services essential to cargo</li> <li>.4 fire fighting on chemical tankers</li> <li>.5 enclosed space rescue</li> <li>.6 cargo reactivity</li> <li>.7 jettisoning cargo</li> <li>.8 use of a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</li> </ul> <p>Actions to be taken following collision, grounding, or spillage</p> <p>Knowledge of medical first aid procedures on board chemical tankers, with reference to the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG)</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>The type and impact of the emergency is promptly identified and the response actions conform with established emergency procedures and contingency plans</p> <p>The order of priority, and the levels and time-scales of making reports and informing personnel on board, are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem</p> <p>Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation procedures are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and are implemented promptly</p> <p>The identification of and actions taken in a medical emergency conform to current recognized first aid practice and international guidelines</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Take precautions to prevent pollution of the environment	Understanding of procedures to prevent pollution of the atmosphere and the environment	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	Operations are conducted in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to prevent pollution of the environment
Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements	Knowledge and understanding of relevant provisions of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL) and other relevant IMO instruments, industry guidelines and port regulations as commonly applied  Proficiency in the use of the IBC Code and related documents	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	The handling of cargoes complies with relevant IMO instruments and established industrial standards and codes of safe working practice

**Section A-V/1-2**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for the training and qualifications of masters, officers and ratings on liquefied gas tankers*

**Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for certification in basic training for liquefied gas tanker cargo operations shall be required to:

- .1 demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-V/1-2-1; and
- .2 provide evidence of having achieved:
  - .2.1 the minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency listed in column 2 of table A-V/1-2-1, and
  - .2.2 the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/1-2-1.

2 Every candidate for certification in advanced training for liquefied gas tanker cargo operations shall be required to:

- .1 demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-V/1-2-2; and
- .2 provide evidence of having achieved:
  - .2.1 the minimum knowledge, understanding and proficiency listed in column 2 of table A-V/1-2-2, and
  - .2.2 the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/1-2-2.

**Table A-V/1-2-1**  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in basic training**  
**for liquefied gas tanker cargo operations**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Contribute to the safe operation of a liquefied gas tanker	<p><i>Design and operational characteristics of liquefied gas tankers</i></p> <p>Basic knowledge of liquefied gas tankers</p> <p>.1 types of liquefied gas tankers</p> <p>.2 general arrangement and construction</p> <p>Basic knowledge of cargo operations:</p> <p>.1 piping systems and valves</p> <p>.2 cargo handling equipment</p> <p>.3 loading, unloading and care in transit</p> <p>.4 emergency shutdown (ESD) system</p> <p>.5 tank cleaning, purging, gas-freeing and inerting</p> <p>Basic knowledge of the physical properties of liquefied gases, including:</p> <p>.1 properties and characteristics</p> <p>.2 pressure and temperature, including vapour pressure/temperature relationship</p> <p>.3 types of electrostatic charge generation</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training</p> <p>.4 approved training programme</p>	<p>Communications within the area of responsibility are clear and effective</p> <p>Cargo operations are carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to ensure safety of operations</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to the safe operation of a liquefied gas tanker (continued)	.4 chemical symbols  Knowledge and understanding of tanker safety culture and safety management		
Take precautions to prevent hazards	Basic knowledge of the hazards associated with tanker operations, including:  .1 health hazards .2 environmental hazards .3 reactivity hazards .4 corrosion hazards .5 explosion and flammability hazards .6 sources of ignition .7 electrostatic hazards .8 toxicity hazards .9 vapour leaks and clouds .10 extremely low temperatures .11 pressure hazards  Basic knowledge of hazard controls:  .1 inerting, drying and monitoring techniques .2 anti-static measures .3 ventilation .4 segregation .5 cargo inhibition .6 importance of cargo compatibility	Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:  .1 approved in-service experience .2 approved training ship experience .3 approved simulator training .4 approved training programme	Correctly identifies, on an MSDS, relevant cargo-related hazards to the vessel and to personnel, and takes the appropriate actions in accordance with established procedures  Identification and actions on becoming aware of a hazardous situation conform to established procedures in line with best practice

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Take precautions to prevent hazards (continued)	<p>.7 atmospheric control</p> <p>.8 gas testing</p> <p>Understanding of information on a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</p>		
Apply occupational health and safety precautions and measures	<p>Function and proper use of gas-measuring instruments and similar equipment</p> <p>Proper use of safety equipment and protective devices, including:</p> <p>.1 breathing apparatus and tank evacuating equipment</p> <p>.2 protective clothing and equipment</p> <p>.3 resuscitators</p> <p>.4 rescue and escape equipment</p> <p>Basic knowledge of safe working practices and procedures in accordance with legislation and industry guidelines and personal shipboard safety relevant to liquefied gas tankers, including:</p> <p>.1 precautions to be taken when entering enclosed spaces</p> <p>.2 precautions to be taken before and during repair and maintenance work</p> <p>.3 safety measures for hot and cold work</p> <p>.4 electrical safety</p> <p>.5 ship/shore safety checklist</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <p>.1 approved in-service experience</p> <p>.2 approved training ship experience</p> <p>.3 approved simulator training</p> <p>.4 approved training programme</p>	<p>Procedures for entry into enclosed spaces are observed</p> <p>Procedures and safe working practices designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
	Basic knowledge of first aid with reference to a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)		First aid do's and don'ts
Carry out fire-fighting operations	<p>Tanker fire organization and action to be taken</p> <p>Special hazards associated with cargo handling and transportation of liquefied gases in bulk</p> <p>Fire-fighting agents used to extinguish gas fires</p> <p>Fixed fire-fighting foam system operations</p> <p>Portable fire-fighting foam operations</p> <p>Fixed dry chemical system operations</p> <p>Basic knowledge of spill containment in relation to fire-fighting operations</p>	<p>Practical exercises and instruction conducted under approved and truly realistic training conditions (e.g. simulated shipboard conditions) and, whenever possible and practicable, in darkness</p>	<p>Initial actions and follow-up actions on becoming aware of an emergency conform with established practices and procedures</p> <p>Action taken on identifying muster signals is appropriate to the indicated emergency and complies with established procedures</p> <p>Clothing and equipment are appropriate to the nature of the fire-fighting operations</p> <p>The timing and sequence of individual actions are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>Extinguishment of fire is achieved using appropriate procedures, techniques and fire-fighting agents</p>
Respond to emergencies	Basic knowledge of emergency procedures, including emergency shutdown	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	The type and impact of the emergency is promptly identified and the response actions conform to the emergency procedures and contingency plans

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Take precautions to prevent pollution of the environment from the release of liquefied gases</p>	<p>Basic knowledge of the effects of pollution on human and marine life</p> <p>Basic knowledge of shipboard procedures to prevent pollution</p> <p>Basic knowledge of measures to be taken in the event of spillage, including the need to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 report relevant information to the responsible persons</li> <li>.2 assist in implementing shipboard spill-containment procedures</li> <li>.3 prevent brittle fracture</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard the environment are observed at all times</p>

**Table A-V/1-2-2**  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in advanced training**  
**for liquefied gas tanker cargo operations**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations</p>	<p><i>Design and characteristics of a liquefied gas tanker</i></p> <p>Knowledge of liquefied gas tanker design, systems, and equipment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 types of liquefied gas tankers and cargo tanks construction</li> <li>.2 general arrangement and construction</li> <li>.3 cargo containment systems, including materials of construction and insulation</li> <li>.4 cargo-handling equipment and instrumentation, including:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 cargo pumps and pumping arrangements</li> <li>.2 cargo pipelines and valves</li> <li>.3 expansion devices</li> <li>.4 flame screens</li> <li>.5 temperature monitoring systems</li> <li>.6 cargo tank level-gauging systems</li> <li>.7 tank pressure monitoring and control systems</li> </ul> </li> <li>.5 cargo temperature maintenance system</li> </ul>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Communications are clear, understood and successful</p> <p>Cargo operations are carried out in a safe manner, taking into account liquefied gas tanker designs, systems and equipment</p> <p>Pumping operations are carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures and are relevant to the type of cargo</p> <p>Cargo operations are planned, risk is managed and carried out in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to ensure safety of operations and avoid pollution of the marine environment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations <i>(continued)</i></p>	<p>.6 tank atmosphere control systems (inert gas, nitrogen), including storage, generation and distribution systems</p> <p>.7 cofferdam heating systems</p> <p>.8 gas-detecting systems</p> <p>.9 ballast system</p> <p>.10 boil-off systems</p> <p>.11 reliquefaction systems</p> <p>.12 cargo Emergency Shut Down system (ESD)</p> <p>.13 custody transfer system</p> <p>Knowledge of pump theory and characteristics, including types of cargo pumps and their safe operation</p> <p><i>Loading, unloading, care and handling of cargo</i></p> <p>Knowledge of the effect of bulk liquid cargoes on trim and stability and structural integrity</p> <p>Proficiency in tanker safety culture and implementation of safety management requirements</p>		<p>Proper loading, stowage and unloading of liquefied gas cargoes ensures that stability and stress conditions remain within safe limits at all times</p> <p>Potential non-compliance with cargo-related procedures is promptly identified and rectified</p> <p>Actions taken and procedures followed correctly identify and make full use of appropriate shipboard equipment</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations <i>(continued)</i>	Proficiency to apply safe preparations, procedures and checklists for all cargo operations, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 post docking and loading:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 tank inspection</li> <li>.2 inerting (O<sub>2</sub> reduction, dewpoint reduction)</li> <li>.3 gassing-up</li> <li>.4 cooling down</li> <li>.5 loading</li> <li>.6 deballasting</li> <li>.7 sampling, including closed-loop sampling</li> </ul> </li> <li>.2 sea passage:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 cooling down</li> <li>.2 pressure maintenance</li> <li>.3 boil-off</li> <li>.4 inhibiting</li> </ul> </li> <li>.3 unloading:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 unloading</li> <li>.2 ballasting</li> <li>.3 stripping and cleaning systems</li> <li>.4 systems to make the tank liquid-free</li> </ul> </li> <li>.4 pre-docking preparation:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 warm-up</li> <li>.2 inerting</li> <li>.3 gas-freeing</li> </ul> </li> <li>.5 ship-to-ship transfer</li> </ul>		Calibration and use of monitoring and gas-detection equipment is consistent with safe operational practices and procedures  Procedures for monitoring and safety systems ensure that all alarms are detected promptly and acted upon in accordance with established procedures

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Ability to safely perform and monitor all cargo operations (continued)</p>	<p>Proficiency to perform cargo measurements and calculations, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 liquid phase</li> <li>.2 gas phase</li> <li>.3 On Board Quantity (OBQ)</li> <li>.4 Remain On Board (ROB)</li> <li>.5 boil-off cargo calculations</li> </ol> <p>Proficiency to manage and supervise personnel with cargo-related responsibilities</p>		<p>Personnel are allocated duties and informed of procedures and standards of work to be followed, in a manner appropriate to the individuals concerned and in accordance with safe operational practices</p>
<p>Familiarity with physical and chemical properties of liquefied gas cargoes</p>	<p>Knowledge and understanding of basic chemistry and physics and the relevant definitions related to the safe carriage of liquefied gases in bulk in ships, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the chemical structure of gases</li> <li>.2 the properties and characteristics of liquefied gases (including CO<sub>2</sub>) and their vapours, including:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 simple gas laws</li> <li>.2 states of matter</li> <li>.3 liquid and vapour densities</li> <li>.4 diffusion and mixing of gases</li> <li>.5 compression of gases</li> <li>.6 reliquefaction and refrigeration of gases</li> </ol> </li> </ol>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	<p>Effective use is made of information resources for identification of properties and characteristics of liquefied gases and their impact on safety, environmental protection and vessel operation</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Familiarity with physical and chemical properties of liquefied gas cargoes <i>(continued)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.7 critical temperature of gases and pressure</li> <li>.8 flashpoint, upper and lower explosive limits, auto-ignition temperature</li> <li>.9 compatibility, reactivity and positive segregation of gases</li> <li>.10 polymerization</li> <li>.11 saturated vapour pressure/reference temperature</li> <li>.12 dewpoint and bubble point</li> <li>.13 lubrication of compressors</li> <li>.14 hydrate formation</li> <li>.3 the properties of single liquids</li> <li>.4 the nature and properties of solutions</li> <li>.5 thermodynamic units</li> <li>.6 basic thermodynamic laws and diagrams</li> <li>.7 properties of materials</li> <li>.8 effect of low temperature – brittle fracture</li> <li>Understanding the information contained in a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)</li> </ul>		

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Take precautions to prevent hazards</p>	<p>Knowledge and understanding of the hazards and control measures associated with liquefied gas tanker cargo operations, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 flammability</li> <li>.2 explosion</li> <li>.3 toxicity</li> <li>.4 reactivity</li> <li>.5 corrosivity</li> <li>.6 health hazards</li> <li>.7 inert gas composition</li> <li>.8 electrostatic hazards</li> <li>.9 polymerizing cargoes</li> </ul> <p>Proficiency to calibrate and use monitoring and gas-detection systems, instruments and equipment</p> <p>Knowledge and understanding of dangers of non-compliance with relevant rules/regulations</p>	<p>Examination and assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Relevant cargo-related hazards to the vessel and to personnel associated with liquefied gas tanker cargo operations are correctly identified, and proper control measures are taken</p> <p>Use of gas-detection devices is in accordance with manuals and good practice</p>
<p>Apply occupational health and safety precautions</p>	<p>Knowledge and understanding of safe working practices, including risk assessment and personal shipboard safety relevant to liquefied gas tankers, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 precautions to be taken when entering enclosed spaces (such as compressor rooms), including the correct use of different types of breathing apparatus</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	<p>Procedures designed to safeguard personnel and the ship are observed at all times</p> <p>Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used</p> <p>Working practices are in accordance with legislative requirements, codes of practice, permits to work and environmental concerns</p> <p>Correct use of breathing apparatus</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Apply occupational health and safety precautions (continued)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.2 precautions to be taken before and during repair and maintenance work, including work affecting pumping, piping, electrical and control systems</li> <li>.3 precautions for hot and cold work</li> <li>.4 precautions for electrical safety</li> <li>.5 use of appropriate Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)</li> <li>.6 precautions for cold burn and frostbite</li> <li>.7 proper use of personal toxicity monitoring equipment</li> </ul>		
Respond to emergencies	Knowledge and understanding of liquefied gas tanker emergency procedures, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 ship emergency response plans</li> <li>.2 cargo operations emergency shutdown procedure</li> <li>.3 emergency cargo valve operations</li> <li>.4 actions to be taken in the event of failure of systems or services essential to cargo operations</li> <li>.5 fire-fighting on liquefied gas tankers</li> <li>.6 jettisoning of cargo</li> <li>.7 enclosed space rescue</li> </ul>	Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ul>	The type and impact of emergency is promptly identified and the response actions conform with established emergency procedures and contingency plans  The order of priority and the levels and timescales of making reports and informing personnel on board are relevant to the nature of the emergency and reflect the urgency of the problem  Evacuation, emergency shutdown and isolation are appropriate to the nature of the emergency and implemented promptly

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Respond to emergencies (continued)	<p>Actions to be taken following collision, grounding or spillage and envelopment of the ship in toxic or flammable vapour</p> <p>Knowledge of medical first-aid procedures and antidotes on board liquefied gas tankers, with reference to the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG)</p>		The identification of and actions taken in a medical emergency conform to current recognized first aid practice and international guidelines
Take precautions to prevent pollution of the environment	Understanding of procedures to prevent pollution of the environment	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	Operations are conducted in accordance with accepted principles and procedures to prevent pollution of the environment
Monitor and control compliance with legislative requirements	<p>Knowledge and understanding of relevant provisions of the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL) and other relevant IMO instruments, industry guidelines and port regulations as commonly applied</p> <p>Proficiency in the use of the IBC and IGC Codes and related documents</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from one or more of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 approved in-service experience</li> <li>.2 approved training ship experience</li> <li>.3 approved simulator training</li> <li>.4 approved training programme</li> </ol>	The handling of liquefied gas cargoes complies with relevant IMO instruments and established industrial standards and codes of safe working practices

## **Section A-V/2**

### ***Mandatory minimum requirements for the training and qualification of masters, officers, ratings and other personnel on passenger ships***

#### **Crowd management training**

1 The crowd management training required by regulation V/2, paragraph 4 for personnel designated on muster lists to assist passengers in emergency situations shall include, but not necessarily be limited to:

- .1 awareness of life-saving appliance and control plans, including:
  - .1.1 knowledge of muster lists and emergency instructions,
  - .1.2 knowledge of the emergency exits, and
  - .1.3 restrictions on the use of elevators;
- .2 the ability to assist passengers en route to muster and embarkation stations, including:
  - .2.1 the ability to give clear reassuring orders,
  - .2.2 the control of passengers in corridors, staircases and passageways,
  - .2.3 maintaining escape routes clear of obstructions,
  - .2.4 methods available for evacuation of disabled persons and persons needing special assistance, and
  - .2.5 search of accommodation spaces;
- .3 mustering procedures, including:
  - .3.1 the importance of keeping order,
  - .3.2 the ability to use procedures for reducing and avoiding panic,
  - .3.3 the ability to use, where appropriate, passenger lists for evacuation counts, and
  - .3.4 the ability to ensure that the passengers are suitably clothed and have donned their lifejackets correctly.

## **Safety training for personnel providing direct service to passengers in passenger spaces**

2 The additional safety training required by regulation V/2, paragraph 5, shall at least ensure attainment of the abilities as follows:

### *Communication*

- .1 Ability to communicate with passengers during an emergency, taking into account:
  - .1.1 the language or languages appropriate to the principal nationalities of passengers carried on the particular route,
  - .1.2 the likelihood that an ability to use an elementary English vocabulary for basic instructions can provide a means of communicating with a passenger in need of assistance whether or not the passenger and crew member share a common language,
  - .1.3 the possible need to communicate during an emergency by some other means, such as by demonstration, or hand signals, or calling attention to the location of instructions, muster stations, life-saving devices or evacuation routes, when oral communication is impractical,
  - .1.4 the extent to which complete safety instructions have been provided to passengers in their native language or languages, and
  - .1.5 the languages in which emergency announcements may be broadcast during an emergency or drill to convey critical guidance to passengers and to facilitate crew members in assisting passengers.

### *Life-saving appliances*

- .2 Ability to demonstrate to passengers the use of personal life-saving appliances.

### *Embarkation procedures*

- .3 embarking and disembarking passengers, with special attention to disabled persons and persons needing assistance.

## **Crisis management and human behaviour training**

3 Masters, chief engineer officers, chief mates, second engineer officers and any person having responsibility for the safety of passengers in emergency situations shall:

- .1 have successfully completed the approved crisis management and human behaviour training required by regulation V/2, paragraph 6, in accordance with their capacity, duties and responsibilities as set out in table A-V/2; and
- .2 be required to provide evidence that the required standard of competence has been achieved in accordance with the methods and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-V/2.

## **Passenger safety, cargo safety and hull integrity training**

4 The passenger safety, cargo safety and hull integrity training required by regulation V/2, paragraph 7, for masters, chief mates, chief engineer officers, second engineer officers and persons assigned immediate responsibility for embarking and disembarking passengers, for loading, discharging or securing cargo or for closing hull openings on board ro-ro passenger ships shall at least ensure attainment of the abilities that are appropriate to their duties and responsibilities as follows:

### *Loading and embarkation procedures*

- .1 Ability to apply properly the procedures established for the ship regarding:
  - .1.1 loading and discharging vehicles, rail cars and other cargo transport units, including related communications,
  - .1.2 lowering and hoisting ramps,
  - .1.3 setting up and stowing retractable vehicle decks, and
  - .1.4 embarking and disembarking passengers, with special attention to disabled persons and persons needing assistance.

### *Carriage of dangerous goods*

- .2 Ability to apply any special safeguards, procedures and requirements regarding the carriage of dangerous goods on board ro-ro passenger ships.

### *Securing cargoes*

- .3 Ability to:
  - .3.1 apply correctly the provisions of the Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing to the vehicles, rail cars and other cargo transport units carried, and
  - .3.2 use properly the cargo-securing equipment and materials provided, taking into account their limitations.

### *Stability, trim and stress calculations*

- .4 Ability to:
  - .4.1 make proper use of the stability and stress information provided,
  - .4.2 calculate stability and trim for different conditions of loading, using the stability calculators or computer programs provided,

- .4.3 calculate load factors for decks, and
- .4.4 calculate the impact of ballast and fuel transfers on stability, trim and stress.

*Opening, closing and securing hull openings*

- .5 Ability to:
  - .5.1 apply properly the procedures established for the ship regarding the opening, closing and securing of bow, stern and side doors and ramps and to correctly operate the associated systems, and
  - .5.2 conduct surveys on proper sealing.

*Ro-ro deck atmosphere*

- .6 Ability to:
  - .6.1 use equipment, where carried, to monitor atmosphere in ro-ro cargo spaces, and
  - .6.2 apply properly the procedures established for the ship for ventilation of ro-ro cargo spaces during loading and discharging of vehicles, while on voyage and in emergencies.

*Table A-V/2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in crisis management  
 and human behaviour**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Organize shipboard emergency procedures	Knowledge of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the general design and layout of the ship</li> <li>.2 safety regulations</li> <li>.3 emergency plans and procedures</li> </ul> The importance of the principles for the development of ship-specific emergency procedures, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the need for pre-planning and drills of shipboard emergency procedures</li> <li>.2 the need for all personnel to be aware of and adhere to pre-planned emergency procedures as carefully as possible in the event of an emergency situation</li> </ul>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, exercises with one or more prepared emergency plans and practical demonstration	The shipboard emergency procedures ensure a state of readiness to respond to emergency situations
Optimize the use of resources	Ability to optimize the use of resources, taking into account: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the possibility that resources available in an emergency may be limited</li> <li>.2 the need to make full use of personnel and equipment immediately available and, if necessary, to improvise</li> </ul> Ability to organize realistic drills to maintain a state of readiness, taking into account lessons learnt from previous accidents involving passenger ships; debriefing after drills	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, practical demonstration and shipboard training and drills of emergency procedures	Contingency plans optimize the use of available resources  Allocation of tasks and responsibilities reflects the known competence of individuals  Roles and responsibilities of teams and individuals are clearly defined

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Control response to emergencies	<p>Ability to make an initial assessment and provide an effective response to emergency situations in accordance with established emergency procedures</p> <p><i>Leadership skills</i></p> <p>Ability to lead and direct others in emergency situations, including the need:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 to set an example during emergency situations</li> <li>.2 to focus decision making, given the need to act quickly in an emergency</li> <li>.3 to motivate, encourage and reassure passengers and other personnel</li> </ul> <p><i>Stress handling</i></p> <p>Ability to identify the development of symptoms of excessive personal stress and those of other members of the ship's emergency team</p> <p>Understanding that stress generated by emergency situations can affect the performance of individuals and their ability to act on instructions and follow procedures</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, practical demonstration and shipboard training and drills of emergency procedures</p>	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with established principles and plans for crisis management on board</p> <p>Objectives and strategy are appropriate to the nature of the emergency, take account of contingencies and make optimum use of available resources</p> <p>Actions of crew members contribute to maintaining order and control</p>
Control passengers and other personnel during emergency situations	<p><i>Human behaviour and responses</i></p> <p>Ability to control passengers and other personnel in emergency situations, including:</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, practical demonstration and shipboard training and drills of emergency procedures</p>	<p>Actions of crew members contribute to maintaining order and control</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Control passengers and other personnel during emergency situations <i>(continued)</i>	<p>.1 awareness of the general reaction patterns of passengers and other personnel in emergency situations, including the possibility that:</p> <p>.1.1 generally it takes some time before people accept the fact that there is an emergency situation</p> <p>.1.2 some people may panic and not behave with a normal level of rationality, that their ability to comprehend may be impaired and they may not be as responsive to instructions as in non-emergency situations</p> <p>.2 awareness that passengers and other personnel may, <i>inter alia</i>:</p> <p>.2.1 start looking for relatives, friends and/or their belongings as a first reaction when something goes wrong</p> <p>.2.2 seek safety in their cabins or in other places on board where they think that they can escape danger</p> <p>.2.3 tend to move to the upper side when the ship is listing</p> <p>.3 appreciation of the possible problem of panic resulting from separating families</p>		

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Establish and maintain effective communications</p>	<p>Ability to establish and maintain effective communications, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the importance of clear and concise instructions and reports</li> <li>.2 the need to encourage an exchange of information with, and feedback from, passengers and other personnel</li> </ul> <p>Ability to provide relevant information to passengers and other personnel during an emergency situation, to keep them apprised of the overall situation and to communicate any action required of them, taking into account:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 the language or languages appropriate to the principal nationalities of passengers and other personnel carried on the particular route</li> <li>.2 the possible need to communicate during an emergency by some other means, such as by demonstration, or by hand signals or calling attention to the location of instructions, muster stations, life-saving devices or evacuation routes, when oral communication is impractical</li> <li>.3 the language in which emergency announcements may be broadcast during an emergency or drill to convey critical guidance to passengers and to facilitate crew members in assisting passengers</li> </ul>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, exercises and practical demonstration</p>	<p>Information from all available sources is obtained, evaluated and confirmed as quickly as possible and reviewed throughout the emergency</p> <p>Information given to individuals, emergency response teams and passengers is accurate, relevant and timely</p> <p>Information keeps passengers informed as to the nature of the emergency and the actions required of them</p>

## CHAPTER VI

### Emergency, occupational safety, security, medical care and survival functions

#### Section A-VI/1

*Mandatory minimum requirements for safety familiarization, basic training and instruction for all seafarers*

#### **Safety familiarization training**

1 Before being assigned to shipboard duties, all persons employed or engaged on a seagoing ship, other than passengers, shall receive approved familiarization training in personal survival techniques or receive sufficient information and instruction, taking account of the guidance given in part B, to be able to:

- .1 communicate with other persons on board on elementary safety matters and understand safety information symbols, signs and alarm signals;
- .2 know what to do if:
  - .2.1 a person falls overboard,
  - .2.2 fire or smoke is detected, or
  - .2.3 the fire or abandon ship alarm is sounded;
- .3 identify muster and embarkation stations and emergency escape routes;
- .4 locate and don lifejackets;
- .5 raise the alarm and have basic knowledge of the use of portable fire extinguishers;
- .6 take immediate action upon encountering an accident or other medical emergency before seeking further medical assistance on board; and
- .7 close and open the fire, weathertight and watertight doors fitted in the particular ship other than those for hull openings.

#### **Basic training\***

2 Seafarers employed or engaged in any capacity on board ship on the business of that ship as part of the ship's complement with designated safety or pollution-prevention duties in the operation of the ship shall, before being assigned to any shipboard duties:

- .1 receive appropriate approved basic training or instruction in:
  - .1.1 personal survival techniques as set out in table A-VI/1-1,
  - .1.2 fire prevention and fire fighting as set out in table A-VI/1-2,
  - .1.3 elementary first aid as set out in table A-VI/1-3, and

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may assist in the preparation of courses.

.1.4 personal safety and social responsibilities as set out in table A-VI/1-4;

.2 be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of tables A-VI/1-1, A-VI/1-2, A-VI/1-3 and A-VI/1-4 through:

.2.1 demonstration of competence, in accordance with the methods and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of those tables, and

.2.2 examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved training programme in the subjects listed in column 2 of those tables.

3 Seafarers qualified in accordance with paragraph 2 in basic training shall be required, every five years, to provide evidence of having maintained the required standards of competence, to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of tables A-VI/1-1 and A-VI/1-2.

4 Parties may accept onboard training and experience for maintaining the required standard of competence in the following areas:

.1 personal survival techniques as set out in table A-VI/1-1:

.1.1 don a lifejacket,

.1.2 board a survival craft from the ship, while wearing a lifejacket,

.1.3 take initial actions on boarding a lifeboat to enhance chance of survival,

.1.4 stream a lifeboat drogue or sea-anchor,

.1.5 operate survival craft equipment, and

.1.6 operate location devices, including radio equipment;

.2 fire prevention and fire fighting as set out in table A-VI/1-2:

.2.1 use self-contained breathing apparatus;

.2.2 effect a rescue in a smoke-filled space, using an approved smoke-generating device aboard, while wearing a breathing apparatus.

### Exemptions

5 The Administration may, in respect of ships other than passenger ships of more than 500 gross tonnage engaged on international voyages and tankers, if it considers that a ship's size and the length or character of its voyage are such as to render the application of the full requirements of this section unreasonable or impracticable, exempt to that extent the seafarers on such a ship or class of ships from some of the requirements, bearing in mind the safety of people on board, the ship and property and the protection of the marine environment.

*Table A-VI/1-1*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in personal survival techniques**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Survive at sea in the event of ship abandonment	<p>Types of emergency situations which may occur, such as collision, fire, foundering</p> <p>Types of life-saving appliances normally carried on ships</p> <p>Equipment in survival craft</p> <p>Location of personal life-saving appliances</p> <p>Principles concerning survival, including:</p> <p>.1 value of training and drills</p> <p>.2 personal protective clothing and equipment</p> <p>.3 need to be ready for any emergency</p> <p>.4 actions to be taken when called to survival craft stations</p> <p>.5 actions to be taken when required to abandon ship</p> <p>.6 actions to be taken when in the water</p> <p>.7 actions to be taken when aboard a survival craft</p> <p>.8 main dangers to survivors</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course or approved in-service experience and examination, including practical demonstration of competence to:</p> <p>.1 don a lifejacket</p> <p>.2 don and use an immersion suit</p> <p>.3 safely jump from a height into the water</p> <p>.4 right an inverted liferaft while wearing a lifejacket</p> <p>.5 swim while wearing a lifejacket</p> <p>.6 keep afloat without a lifejacket</p> <p>.7 board a survival craft from the ship and water while wearing a lifejacket</p> <p>.8 take initial actions on boarding survival craft to enhance chance of survival</p> <p>.9 stream a drogue or sea-anchor</p> <p>.10 operate survival craft equipment</p> <p>.11 operate location devices, including radio equipment</p>	<p>Action taken on identifying muster signals is appropriate to the indicated emergency and complies with established procedures</p> <p>The timing and sequence of individual actions are appropriate to the prevailing circumstance and conditions and minimize potential dangers and threats to survival</p> <p>Method of boarding survival craft is appropriate and avoids dangers to other survivors</p> <p>Initial actions after leaving the ship and procedures and actions in water minimize threats to survival</p>

*Table A-VI/1-2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in fire prevention and fire fighting**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Minimize the risk of fire and maintain a state of readiness to respond to emergency situations involving fire	<p>Shipboard fire-fighting organization</p> <p>Location of fire-fighting appliances and emergency escape routes</p> <p>The elements of fire and explosion (the fire triangle)</p> <p>Types and sources of ignition</p> <p>Flammable materials, fire hazards and spread of fire</p> <p>The need for constant vigilance</p> <p>Actions to be taken on board ship</p> <p>Fire and smoke detection and automatic alarm systems</p> <p>Classification of fire and applicable extinguishing agents</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or attendance at an approved course	<p>Initial actions on becoming aware of an emergency conform with accepted practices and procedures</p> <p>Action taken on identifying muster signals is appropriate to the indicated emergency and complies with established procedures</p>
Fight and extinguish fires	<p>Fire-fighting equipment and its location on board</p> <p>Instruction in:</p> <p>.1 fixed installations</p> <p>.2 fire-fighter's outfits</p> <p>.3 personal equipment</p> <p>.4 fire-fighting appliances and equipment</p> <p>.5 fire-fighting methods</p> <p>.6 fire-fighting agents</p> <p>.7 fire-fighting procedures</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course, including practical demonstration in spaces which provide truly realistic training conditions (e.g., simulated shipboard conditions) and, whenever possible and practical, in darkness, of the ability to:</p> <p>.1 use various types of portable fire extinguishers</p> <p>.2 use self-contained breathing apparatus</p>	<p>Clothing and equipment are appropriate to the nature of the fire-fighting operations</p> <p>The timing and sequence of individual actions are appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions</p> <p>Extinguishment of fire is achieved using appropriate procedures, techniques and fire-fighting agents</p> <p>Breathing apparatus procedures and techniques comply with accepted practices and procedures</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Fight and extinguish fires <i>(continued)</i>	.8 use of breathing apparatus for fighting fires and effecting rescues	.3 extinguish smaller fires, e.g., electrical fires, oil fires, propane fires  .4 extinguish extensive fires with water, using jet and spray nozzles  .5 extinguish fires with foam, powder or any other suitable chemical agent  .6 enter and pass through, with lifeline but without breathing apparatus, a compartment into which high-expansion foam has been injected  .7 fight fire in smoke-filled enclosed spaces wearing self-contained breathing apparatus  .8 extinguish fire with water fog or any other suitable fire-fighting agent in an accommodation room or simulated engine-room with fire and heavy smoke  .9 extinguish oil fire with fog applicator and spray nozzles, dry chemical powder or foam applicators  .10 effect a rescue in a smoke-filled space wearing breathing apparatus	

*Table A-VI/1-3*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in elementary first aid**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Take immediate action upon encountering an accident or other medical emergency	<p>Assessment of needs of casualties and threats to own safety</p> <p>Appreciation of body structure and functions</p> <p>Understanding of immediate measures to be taken in cases of emergency, including the ability to:</p> <p>.1 position casualty</p> <p>.2 apply resuscitation techniques</p> <p>.3 control bleeding</p> <p>.4 apply appropriate measures of basic shock management</p> <p>.5 apply appropriate measures in event of burns and scalds, including accidents caused by electric current</p> <p>.6 rescue and transport a casualty</p> <p>.7 improvise bandages and use materials in the emergency kit</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	<p>The manner and timing of raising the alarm is appropriate to the circumstances of the accident or medical emergency</p> <p>The identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries is prompt and complete and the priority and sequence of actions is proportional to any potential threat to life</p> <p>Risk of further harm to self and casualty is minimized at all times</p>

*Table A-VI/1-4*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in personal safety  
 and social responsibilities**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Comply with emergency procedures	<p>Types of emergency which may occur, such as collision, fire, foundering</p> <p>Knowledge of shipboard contingency plans for response to emergencies</p> <p>Emergency signals and specific duties allocated to crew members in the muster list; muster stations; correct use of personal safety equipment</p> <p>Action to take on discovering potential emergency, including fire, collision, foundering and ingress of water into the ship</p> <p>Action to take on hearing emergency alarm signals</p> <p>Value of training and drills</p> <p>Knowledge of escape routes and internal communication and alarm systems</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	<p>Initial action on becoming aware of an emergency conforms to established emergency response procedures</p> <p>Information given on raising alarm is prompt, accurate, complete and clear</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Take precautions to prevent pollution of the marine environment	<p>Basic knowledge of the impact of shipping on the marine environment and the effects of operational or accidental pollution on it</p> <p>Basic environmental protection procedures</p> <p>Basic knowledge of complexity and diversity of the marine environment</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Organizational procedures designed to safeguard the marine environment are observed at all times
Observe safe working practices	<p>Importance of adhering to safe working practices at all times</p> <p>Safety and protective devices available to protect against potential hazards aboard ship</p> <p>Precautions to be taken prior to entering enclosed spaces</p> <p>Familiarization with international measures concerning accident prevention and occupational health*</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Safe working practices are observed and appropriate safety and protective equipment is correctly used at all times
Contribute to effective communications on board ship	<p>Understand the principles of, and barriers to, effective communication between individuals and teams within the ship</p> <p>Ability to establish and maintain effective communications</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Communications are clear and effective at all times

\* The ILO Code of Practice on “Accident Prevention on Board Ship at Sea and in Port” may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Contribute to effective human relationships on board ship	Importance of maintaining good human and working relationships aboard ship Basic teamworking principles and practice, including conflict resolution Social responsibilities; employment conditions; individual rights and obligations; dangers of drug and alcohol abuse	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Expected standards of work and behaviour are observed at all times
Understand and take necessary actions to control fatigue	Importance of obtaining the necessary rest Effects of sleep, schedules, and the circadian rhythm on fatigue Effects of physical stressors on seafarers Effects of environmental stressors in and outside the ship and their impact on seafarers Effects of schedule changes on seafarer fatigue	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Fatigue management practices are observed and appropriate actions are used at all times

## Section A-VI/2

*Mandatory minimum requirements for the issue of certificates of proficiency in survival craft, rescue boats and fast rescue boats*

### **PROFICIENCY IN SURVIVAL CRAFT AND RESCUE BOATS OTHER THAN FAST RESCUE BOATS**

#### **Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for a certificate of proficiency in survival craft and rescue boats other than fast rescue boats shall be required to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-1.

2 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/2-1 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to launch and take charge of a survival craft or rescue boat in emergency situations\*.

3 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take account of the guidance given in part B of this Code.

4 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence through:

- .1 demonstration of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-1, in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of that table; and
- .2 examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved training programme covering the material set out in column 2 of table A-VI/2-1.

5 Seafarers qualified in accordance with paragraph 4 in survival craft and rescue boats other than fast rescue boats shall be required, every five years, to provide evidence of having maintained the required standards of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-1.

6 Parties may accept onboard training and experience for maintaining the required standard of competence of table A-VI/2-1 in the following areas:

- .1 take charge of a survival craft or rescue boat during and after launch:
  - .1.1 interpret the markings on survival craft as to the number of persons they are intended to carry;
  - .1.2 give correct commands for launching and boarding survival craft, clearing the ship and handling and disembarking persons from survival craft;
  - .1.3 prepare and safely launch survival craft and clear the ship's side quickly; and

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

- .1.4 safely recover survival craft and rescue boats;
- .2 manage survivors and survival craft after abandoning ship:
  - .2.1 row and steer a boat and steer by compass;
  - .2.2 use individual items of equipment of survival crafts, except for pyrotechnics, and
  - .2.3 rig devices to aid location;
- .3 use locating devices, including communication and signalling apparatus:
  - .3.1 use of portable radio equipment for survival craft;
- .4 apply first aid to survivors.

## PROFICIENCY IN FAST RESCUE BOATS

### Standard of competence

- 7 Every candidate for a certificate of proficiency in fast rescue boats shall be required to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-2.
- 8 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/2-2 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to launch and take charge of a fast rescue boat in emergency situations\* .
- 9 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take account of the guidance given in part B of this Code.
- 10 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence through:
- .1 demonstration of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-2, in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of that table; and
  - .2 examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved training programme covering the material set out in column 2 of table A-VI/2-2.
- 11 Seafarers qualified in accordance with paragraph 10 in fast rescue boats shall be required, every five years, to provide evidence of having maintained the required standards of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/2-2.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

12 Parties may accept onboard training and experience for maintaining the required standard of competence of table A-VI/2-2, in the following areas:

- .1 Take charge of a fast rescue boat during and after launch:
  - .1.1 control safe launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat,
  - .1.2 handle a fast rescue boat in prevailing weather and sea conditions,
  - .1.3 use communications and signalling equipment between the fast rescue boat and a helicopter and a ship,
  - .1.4 use the emergency equipment carried; and
  - .1.5 carry out search patterns, taking account of environmental factors.

*Table A-VI/2-1*  
**Specification of the minimum standard of competence in survival craft  
 and rescue boats other than fast rescue boats**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Take charge of a survival craft or rescue boat during and after launch	Construction and outfit of survival craft and rescue boats and individual items of their equipment  Particular characteristics and facilities of survival craft and rescue boats  Various types of device used for launching survival craft and rescue boats  Methods of launching survival craft into a rough sea  Methods of recovering survival craft  Action to be taken after leaving the ship  Methods of launching and recovering rescue boats in a rough sea  Dangers associated with use of on-load release devices  Knowledge of maintenance procedures	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 right an inverted liferaft while wearing a lifejacket</li> <li>.2 interpret the markings on survival craft as to the number of persons they are intended to carry</li> <li>.3 give correct commands for launching and boarding survival craft, clearing the ship and handling and disembarking persons from survival craft</li> <li>.4 prepare and safely launch survival craft and clear the ship's side quickly and operate off-load and on-load release devices</li> <li>.5 safely recover survival craft and rescue boats, including the proper resetting of both off-load and on-load release devices, using inflatable liferaft and open or enclosed lifeboat with inboard engine or approved simulator training, where appropriate</li> </ol>	Preparation, boarding and launching of survival craft are within equipment limitations and enable survival craft to clear the ship safely  Initial actions on leaving the ship minimize threat to survival  Recovery of survival craft and rescue boats is within equipment limitations  Equipment is operated in accordance with manufacturers' instructions for release and resetting

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Operate a survival craft engine	Methods of starting and operating a survival craft engine and its accessories together with the use of the fire extinguisher provided	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to start and operate an inboard engine fitted in an open or enclosed lifeboat	Propulsion is available and maintained as required for manoeuvring
Manage survivors and survival craft after abandoning ship	<p>Handling survival craft in rough weather</p> <p>Use of painter, sea-anchor and all other equipment</p> <p>Apportionment of food and water in survival craft</p> <p>Action taken to maximize detectability and location of survival craft</p> <p>Method of helicopter rescue</p> <p>Effects of hypothermia and its prevention; use of protective covers and garments, including immersion suits and thermal protective aids</p> <p>Use of rescue boats and motor lifeboats for marshalling liferafts and rescue of survivors and persons in the sea</p> <p>Beaching survival craft</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to:</p> <p>.1 row and steer a boat and steer by compass</p> <p>.2 use individual items of equipment of survival craft</p> <p>.3 rig devices to aid location</p>	Survival management is appropriate to prevailing circumstances and conditions
Use locating devices, including communication and signalling apparatus and pyrotechnics	<p>Radio life-saving appliances carried in survival craft, including satellite EPIRBs and SARTs</p> <p>Pyrotechnic distress signals</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to:</p> <p>.1 use portable radio equipment for survival craft</p> <p>.2 use signalling equipment, including pyrotechnics</p>	Use and choice of communication and signalling apparatus is appropriate to prevailing circumstances and conditions

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Apply first aid to survivors	Use of the first-aid kit and resuscitation techniques  Management of injured persons, including control of bleeding and shock	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to deal with injured persons both during and after abandonment, using first-aid kit and resuscitation technique	Identification of the probable cause, nature and extent of injuries or condition is prompt and accurate  Priority and sequence of treatment minimizes any threat to life

*Table A-VI/2-2*  
**Specification of the minimum standard of competence in fast rescue boats**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Understand the construction, maintenance, repair and outfitting of fast rescue boats	<p>Construction and outfitting of fast rescue boats and individual items of their equipment</p> <p>Knowledge of the maintenance and emergency repairs of fast rescue boats and the normal inflation and deflation of buoyancy compartments of inflated fast rescue boats</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction	<p>The method of carrying out routine maintenance and emergency repairs</p> <p>Identify components and required equipment for fast rescue boats</p>
Take charge of the launching equipment and appliance as commonly fitted, during launching and recovery	<p>Assessment of the readiness of launching equipment and launching appliance of fast rescue boats for immediate launching and operation</p> <p>Understand the operation and limitations of the winch, brakes, falls, painters, motion-compensation and other equipment as commonly fitted</p> <p>Safety precautions during launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat</p> <p>Launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat in prevailing and adverse weather and sea conditions</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to control safe launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat, with equipment as fitted	Ability to prepare and take charge of the launching equipment and appliance during launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat
Take charge of a fast rescue boat as commonly fitted, during launching and recovery	<p>Assessment of the readiness of fast rescue boats and related equipment for immediate launching and operation</p> <p>Safety precautions during launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat</p> <p>Launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat in prevailing and adverse weather and sea conditions</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to conduct safe launching and recovery of a fast rescue boat, with equipment as fitted	Ability to take charge of a fast rescue boat during launching and recovery

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Take charge of a fast rescue boat after launching	<p>Particular characteristics, facilities and limitations of fast rescue boats</p> <p>Procedures for the righting of a capsized fast rescue boat</p> <p>How to handle a fast rescue boat in prevailing and adverse weather and sea conditions</p> <p>Navigational and safety equipment available in a fast rescue boat</p> <p>Search patterns and environmental factors affecting their execution</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 right a capsized fast rescue boat</li> <li>.2 handle a fast rescue boat in prevailing weather and sea conditions</li> <li>.3 swim in special equipment</li> <li>.4 use communications and signalling equipment between the fast rescue boat and a helicopter and a ship</li> <li>.5 use the emergency equipment carried</li> <li>.6 recover a casualty from the water and transfer a casualty to a rescue helicopter or to a ship or to a place of safety</li> <li>.7 carry out search patterns, taking account of environmental factors</li> </ol>	<p>Demonstration of operation of fast rescue boats within equipment limitations in prevailing weather conditions</p>
Operate a fast rescue boat engine	Methods of starting and operating a fast rescue boat engine and its accessories	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical demonstration of ability to start and operate a fast rescue boat engine	Engine is started and operated as required for manoeuvring

## Section A-VI/3

### *Mandatory minimum training in advanced fire fighting*

#### Standard of competence

1 Seafarers designated to control fire-fighting operations shall have successfully completed advanced training in techniques for fighting fire, with particular emphasis on organization, tactics and command, and shall be required to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/3.

2 The level of knowledge and understanding of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/3 shall be sufficient for the effective control of fire-fighting operations on board ship\*.

3 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take account of the guidance given in part B of this Code.

4 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence, in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-VI/3.

5 Seafarers qualified in accordance with paragraph 4 in advanced fire fighting shall be required, every five years, to provide evidence of having maintained the required standards of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/3.

6 Parties may accept onboard training and experience for maintaining the required standard of competence of table A-VI/3, in the following areas:

.1 Control fire-fighting operations aboard ships;

.1.1 fire-fighting procedures at sea and in port, with particular emphasis on organization, tactics and command,

.1.2 communication and coordination during fire-fighting operations,

.1.3 ventilation control, including smoke extraction,

.1.4 control of fuel and electrical systems,

.1.5 fire-fighting process hazards (dry distillation, chemical reactions, boiler uptake),

.1.6 fire precautions and hazards associated with the storage and handling of materials,

.1.7 management and control of injured persons, and

.1.8 procedures for co-ordination with shore-based fire fighters.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may be of assistance in the preparation of courses.

*Table A-VI/3*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in advanced fire fighting**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Control fire-fighting operations aboard ships	<p>Fire-fighting procedures at sea and in port, with particular emphasis on organization, tactics and command</p> <p>Use of water for fire-extinguishing, the effect on ship stability, precautions and corrective procedures</p> <p>Communication and co-ordination during fire-fighting operations</p> <p>Ventilation control, including smoke extraction</p> <p>Control of fuel and electrical systems</p> <p>Fire-fighting process hazards (dry distillation, chemical reactions, boiler uptake fires, etc.)</p> <p>Fire fighting involving dangerous goods</p> <p>Fire precautions and hazards associated with the storage and handling of materials (paints, etc.)</p> <p>Management and control of injured persons</p> <p>Procedures for co-ordination with shore-based fire fighters</p>	<p>Practical exercises and instruction conducted under approved and truly realistic training conditions (e.g., simulated shipboard conditions) and, whenever possible and practicable, in darkness</p>	<p>Actions taken to control fires are based on a full and accurate assessment of the incident, using all available sources of information</p> <p>The order of priority, timing and sequence of actions are appropriate to the overall requirements of the incident and to minimize damage and potential damage to the ship, injuries to personnel and impairment of the operational effectiveness of the ship</p> <p>Transmission of information is prompt, accurate, complete and clear</p> <p>Personal safety during fire control activities is safeguarded at all times</p>

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Organize and train fire parties	Preparation of contingency plans  Composition and allocation of personnel to fire parties  Strategies and tactics for control of fires in various parts of the ship	Practical exercises and instruction conducted under approved and truly realistic training conditions, e.g., simulated shipboard conditions	Composition and organization of fire control parties ensure the prompt and effective implementation of emergency plans and procedures
Inspect and service fire-detection and fire-extinguishing systems and equipment	Fire-detection systems; fixed fire-extinguishing systems; portable and mobile fire-extinguishing equipment, including appliances, pumps and rescue, salvage, life-support, personal protective and communication equipment  Requirements for statutory and classification surveys	Practical exercises, using approved equipment and systems in a realistic training environment	Operational effectiveness of all fire-detection and fire-extinguishing systems and equipment is maintained at all times in accordance with performance specifications and legislative requirements
Investigate and compile reports on incidents involving fire	Assessment of cause of incidents involving fire	Practical exercises in a realistic training environment	Causes of fire are identified and the effectiveness of countermeasures is evaluated

## **Section A-VI/4**

*Mandatory minimum requirements related to medical first aid and medical care*

### **Standard of competence for seafarers designated to provide medical first aid on board ship**

1 Every seafarer who is designated to provide medical first aid on board ship shall be required to demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/4-1.

2 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/4-1 shall be sufficient to enable the designated seafarer to take immediate effective action in the case of accidents or illness likely to occur on board ship\*.

3 Every candidate for certification under the provisions of regulation VI/4, paragraph 1 shall be required to provide evidence that the required standard of competence has been achieved in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-VI/4-1.

### **Standard of competence for seafarers designated to take charge of medical care on board ship**

4 Every seafarer who is designated to take charge of medical care on board ship shall be required to demonstrate the competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/4-2.

5 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/4-2 shall be sufficient to enable the designated seafarer to take immediate effective action in the case of accidents or illness likely to occur on board ship\*.

6 Every candidate for certification under the provisions of regulation VI/4, paragraph 2 shall be required to provide evidence that the required standard of competence has been achieved in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-VI/4-2.

---

\* The relevant IMO Model Course(s) may assist in the preparation of courses.

*Table A-VI/4-1*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in medical first aid**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Apply immediate first aid in the event of accident or illness on board	First-aid kit Body structure and function Toxicological hazards on board, including use of the Medical First Aid Guide for Use in Accidents Involving Dangerous Goods (MFAG) or its national equivalent Examination of casualty or patient Spinal injuries Burns, scalds and effects of heat and cold Fractures, dislocations and muscular injuries Medical care of rescued persons Radio medical advice Pharmacology Sterilization Cardiac arrest, drowning and asphyxia	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction	The identification of probable cause, nature and extent of injuries is prompt, complete and conforms to current first-aid practice  Risk of harm to self and to others is minimized at all times  Treatment of injuries and the patient's condition is appropriate and conforms to recognized first-aid practice and international guidelines

*Table A-VI/4-2*  
**Specification of minimum standard of competence in medical care**

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Provide medical care to the sick and injured while they remain on board	Care of casualty involving: .1 head and spinal injuries .2 injuries of ear, nose, throat and eyes .3 external and internal bleeding .4 burns, scalds and frostbite .5 fractures, dislocations and muscular injuries .6 wounds, wound healing and infection .7 pain relief .8 techniques of sewing and clamping .9 management of acute abdominal conditions .10 minor surgical treatment .11 dressing and bandaging Aspects of nursing: .1 general principles .2 nursing care Diseases, including: .1 medical conditions and emergencies .2 sexually transmitted diseases .3 tropical and infectious diseases Alcohol and drug abuse	Assessment of evidence obtained from practical instruction and demonstration  Where practicable, approved practical experience at a hospital or similar establishment	Identification of symptoms is based on the concepts of clinical examination and medical history  Protection against infection and spread of diseases is complete and effective  Personal attitude is calm, confident and reassuring  Treatment of injury or condition is appropriate and conforms to accepted medical practice and relevant national and international medical guides  The dosage and application of drugs and medication complies with manufacturers' recommendations and accepted medical practice  The significance of changes in patient's condition is promptly recognized

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
<p>Provide medical care to the sick and injured while they remain on board (continued)</p>	<p>Dental care</p> <p>Gynaecology, pregnancy and childbirth</p> <p>Medical care of rescued persons</p> <p>Death at sea</p> <p>Hygiene</p> <p>Disease prevention, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 disinfection, disinfection, de-ratting</li> <li>.2 vaccinations</li> </ul> <p>Keeping records and copies of applicable regulations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 keeping medical records</li> <li>.2 international and national maritime medical regulations</li> </ul>		
<p>Participate in coordinated schemes for medical assistance to ships</p>	<p>External assistance, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 radio medical advice</li> <li>.2 transportation of the ill and injured, including helicopter evacuation</li> <li>.3 medical care of sick seafarers involving co-operation with port health authorities or out-patient wards in port</li> </ul>		<p>Clinical examination procedures are complete and comply with instructions received</p> <p>The method and preparation for evacuation is in accordance with recognized procedures and is designed to maximize the welfare of the patient</p> <p>Procedures for seeking radio medical advice conform to established practice and recommendations</p>

**Section A-VI/5**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for the issue of certificates of proficiency for ship security officers*

**Standard of competence**

1 Every candidate for a certificate of proficiency as a ship security officer shall be required to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/5.

2 The level of knowledge of the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/5 shall be sufficient to enable the candidate to act as the designated ship security officer.

3 Training and experience to achieve the necessary level of theoretical knowledge, understanding and proficiency shall take into account the guidance in section B-VI/5 of this Code.

4 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-VI/5.

*Table A-VI/5*  
**Specifications of minimum standards of competence for ship security officers**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Maintain and supervise the implementation of a ship security plan	<p>Knowledge of international maritime security policy and responsibilities of Governments, companies and designated persons, including elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of the purpose for and the elements that make up a ship security plan, related procedures and maintenance of records, including those that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of procedures to be employed in implementing a ship security plan and reporting of security incidents</p> <p>Knowledge of maritime security levels and the consequential security measures and procedures aboard ship and in the port facility environment</p> <p>Knowledge of the requirements and procedures for conducting internal audits, on-scene inspections, control and monitoring of security activities specified in a ship security plan</p> <p>Knowledge of the requirements and procedures for reporting to the company security officer any deficiencies and non-conformities identified during internal audits, periodic reviews, and security inspections</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training or examination	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p> <p>Legislative requirements relating to security are correctly identified</p> <p>Procedures achieve a state of readiness to respond to changes in maritime security levels</p> <p>Communications within the ship security officer's area of responsibility are clear and understood</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain and supervise the implementation of a ship security plan <i>(continued)</i>	<p>Knowledge of the methods and procedures used to modify the ship security plan</p> <p>Knowledge of security-related contingency plans and the procedures for responding to security threats or breaches of security, including provisions for maintaining critical operations of the ship/port interface, including also elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Working knowledge of maritime security terms and definitions, including elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p>		
Assess security risk, threat, and vulnerability	<p>Knowledge of risk assessment and assessment tools</p> <p>Knowledge of security assessment documentation, including the Declaration of Security</p> <p>Knowledge of techniques used to circumvent security measures, including those used by pirates and armed robbers</p> <p>Knowledge enabling recognition, on a non-discriminatory basis, of persons posing potential security risks</p> <p>Knowledge enabling recognition of weapons, dangerous substances and devices and awareness of the damage they can cause</p> <p>Knowledge of crowd management and control techniques, where appropriate</p>	<p>Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training, or approved experience and examination, including practical demonstration of competence to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>.1 conduct physical searches</li> <li>.2 conduct non-intrusive inspections</li> </ol>	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p> <p>Procedures achieve a state of readiness to respond to changes in the maritime security levels</p> <p>Communications within the ship security officer's area of responsibility are clear and understood</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Assess security risk, threat, and vulnerability (continued)	<p>Knowledge in handling sensitive security-related information and security-related communications</p> <p>Knowledge of implementing and co-ordinating searches</p> <p>Knowledge of the methods for physical searches and non-intrusive inspections</p>		
Undertake regular inspections of the ship to ensure that appropriate security measures are implemented and maintained	<p>Knowledge of the requirements for designating and monitoring restricted areas</p> <p>Knowledge of controlling access to the ship and to restricted areas on board ship</p> <p>Knowledge of methods for effective monitoring of deck areas and areas surrounding the ship</p> <p>Knowledge of security aspects relating to the handling of cargo and ship's stores with other shipboard personnel and relevant port facility security officers</p> <p>Knowledge of methods for controlling the embarkation, disembarkation and access while on board of persons and their effects</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training or examination	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p> <p>Procedures achieve a state of readiness to respond to changes in the maritime security levels</p> <p>Communications within the ship security officer's area of responsibility are clear and understood</p>
Ensure that security equipment and systems, if any, are properly operated, tested and calibrated	<p>Knowledge of the various types of security equipment and systems and their limitations, including those that could be used in case of attacks by pirates and armed robbers</p> <p>Knowledge of the procedures, instructions and guidance on the use of ship security alert systems</p> <p>Knowledge of the methods for testing, calibrating, and maintaining security systems and equipment, particularly whilst at sea</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training or examination	Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Encourage security awareness and vigilance	<p>Knowledge of training, drill and exercise requirements under relevant conventions, codes and IMO circulars, including those relevant to anti-piracy and anti-armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of the methods for enhancing security awareness and vigilance on board</p> <p>Knowledge of the methods for assessing the effectiveness of drills and exercises</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved training or examination	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p> <p>Communications within the ship security officer's area of responsibility are clear and understood</p>

## **Section A-VI/6**

*Mandatory minimum requirements for security-related training and instruction for all seafarers*

### **Standard of competence for security-related familiarization training**

1 Before being assigned to shipboard duties, all persons employed or engaged on a seagoing ship which is required to comply with the provisions of the ISPS Code, other than passengers, shall receive approved security-related familiarization training, taking account of the guidance given in part B, to be able to:

- .1 report a security incident, including a piracy or armed robbery threat or attack;
- .2 know the procedures to follow when they recognize a security threat; and
- .3 take part in security-related emergency and contingency procedures.

2 Seafarers with designated security duties engaged or employed on a seagoing ship shall, before being assigned such duties, receive security-related familiarization training in their assigned duties and responsibilities, taking into account the guidance given in part B.

3 The security-related familiarization training shall be conducted by the ship security officer or an equally qualified person.

### **Standard of competence for security-awareness training**

4 Seafarers employed or engaged in any capacity on board a ship which is required to comply with the provisions of the ISPS Code on the business of that ship as part of the ship's complement without designated security duties shall, before being assigned to any shipboard duties:

- .1 receive appropriate approved training or instruction in security awareness as set out in table A-VI/6-1;
- .2 be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/6-1:
  - .2.1 by demonstration of competence, in accordance with the methods and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of table A-VI/6-1; and
  - .2.2 by examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved training programme in the subjects listed in column 2 of table A-VI/6-1.

### *Transitional provisions*

5 Until [date of entry into force plus 2 years], seafarers who commenced an approved seagoing service prior to the date of entry into force of this section shall be able to establish that they meet the requirements of paragraph 4 by:

- .1 approved seagoing service as shipboard personnel, for a period of at least six months in total during the preceding three years; or
- .2 having performed security functions considered to be equivalent to the seagoing service required in paragraph 5.1; or
- .3 passing an approved test; or
- .4 successfully completing approved training.

### **Standard of competence for seafarers with designated security duties**

6 Every seafarer who is designated to perform security duties, including anti-piracy and anti-armed-robbery-related activities, shall be required to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/6-2.

7 The level of knowledge of the subjects in column 2 of table A-VI/6-2 shall be sufficient to enable every candidate to perform on board designated security duties, including anti-piracy and anti-armed-robbery-related activities.

8 Every candidate for certification shall be required to provide evidence of having achieved the required standard of competence through:

- .1 demonstration of competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/6-2, in accordance with the methods for demonstrating competence and the criteria for evaluating competence tabulated in columns 3 and 4 of that table; and
- .2 examination or continuous assessment as part of an approved training programme covering the material set out in column 2 of table A-VI/6-2.

### ***Transitional provisions***

9 Until [*date of entry into force + 2 years*], seafarers with designated security duties who commenced an approved seagoing service prior to the date of entry into force of this section shall be able to demonstrate competence to undertake the tasks, duties and responsibilities listed in column 1 of table A-VI/6-2 by:

- .1 approved seagoing service as shipboard personnel with designated security duties, for a period of at least six months in total during the preceding three years; or
- .2 having performed security functions considered to be equivalent to the seagoing service required in paragraph 9.1; or
- .3 passing an approved test; or
- .4 successfully completing approved training.

*Table A-VI/6-1*

**Specification of minimum standard of competence in security awareness**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Contribute to the enhancement of maritime security through heightened awareness	<p>Basic working knowledge of maritime security terms and definitions</p> <p>Basic working knowledge of maritime security terms and definitions, including elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Basic knowledge of international maritime security policy and responsibilities of Governments, companies and persons</p> <p>Basic knowledge of maritime security levels and their impact on security measures and procedures aboard ship and in port facilities</p> <p>Basic knowledge of security reporting procedures</p> <p>Basic knowledge of security-related contingency plans</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Requirements relating to enhanced maritime security are correctly identified

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Recognition of security threats	<p>Basic knowledge of techniques used to circumvent security measures</p> <p>Basic knowledge enabling recognition of potential security threats, including elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Basic knowledge enabling recognition of weapons, dangerous substances and devices and awareness of the damage they can cause</p> <p>Basic knowledge in handling security-related information and security-related communications</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Maritime security threats are correctly identified
Understanding of the need for and methods of maintaining security awareness and vigilance	Basic knowledge of training, drill and exercise requirements under relevant conventions, codes and IMO circulars, including those relevant for anti-piracy and anti-armed robbery	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Requirements relating to enhanced maritime security are correctly identified

**Table A-VI/6-2**  
**Specifications of minimum standards of competence for seafarers**  
**with designated security duties**

<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>	<b>Column 4</b>
<b>Competence</b>	<b>Knowledge, understanding and proficiency</b>	<b>Methods for demonstrating competence</b>	<b>Criteria for evaluating competence</b>
Maintain the conditions set forth in a ship security plan	<p>Working knowledge of maritime security terms and definitions, including elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of international maritime security policy and responsibilities of Governments, companies and persons, including working knowledge of elements that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of maritime security levels and their impact on security measures and procedures aboard ship and in the port facilities</p> <p>Knowledge of security reporting procedures</p> <p>Knowledge of procedures and requirements for drills and exercises under relevant conventions, codes and IMO circulars, including working knowledge of those that may relate to piracy and armed robbery</p> <p>Knowledge of the procedures for conducting inspections and surveys and for the control and monitoring of security activities specified in a ship security plan</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	<p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p> <p>Legislative requirements relating to security are correctly identified</p> <p>Communications within the area of responsibility are clear and understood</p>

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Maintain the conditions set forth in a ship security plan ( <i>continued</i> )	Knowledge of security-related contingency plans and the procedures for responding to security threats or breaches of security, including provisions for maintaining critical operations of the ship/port interface, and including also working knowledge of those that may relate to piracy and armed robbery		
Recognition of security risks and threats	<p>Knowledge of security documentation, including the Declaration of Security</p> <p>Knowledge of techniques used to circumvent security measures, including those used by pirates and armed robbers</p> <p>Knowledge enabling recognition of potential security threats</p> <p>Knowledge enabling recognition of weapons, dangerous substances and devices and awareness of the damage they can cause</p> <p>Knowledge of crowd management and control techniques, where appropriate</p> <p>Knowledge in handling security-related information and security-related communications</p> <p>Knowledge of the methods for physical searches and non-intrusive inspections</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
Competence	Knowledge, understanding and proficiency	Methods for demonstrating competence	Criteria for evaluating competence
Undertake regular security inspections of the ship	<p>Knowledge of the techniques for monitoring restricted areas</p> <p>Knowledge of controlling access to the ship and to restricted areas on board ship</p> <p>Knowledge of methods for effective monitoring of deck areas and areas surrounding the ship</p> <p>Knowledge of inspection methods relating to the cargo and ship's stores</p> <p>Knowledge of methods for controlling the embarkation, disembarkation and access while on board of persons and their effects</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended
Proper usage of security equipment and systems, if any	<p>General knowledge of various types of security equipment and systems, including those that could be used in case of attacks by pirates and armed robbers, including their limitations</p> <p>Knowledge of the need for testing, calibrating, and maintaining security systems and equipment, particularly whilst at sea</p>	Assessment of evidence obtained from approved instruction or during attendance at an approved course	<p>Equipment and systems operations are carried out in accordance with established equipment operating instructions and taking into account the limitations of the equipment and systems</p> <p>Procedures and actions are in accordance with the principles established by the ISPS Code and the SOLAS Convention, as amended</p>

## CHAPTER VII

### Standards regarding alternative certification

#### Section A-VII/1

##### *Issue of alternative certificates*

1 Every candidate for certification at the operational level under the provisions of chapter VII of the annex to the Convention shall be required to complete relevant education and training and meet the standard of competence for all the functions prescribed in either table A-II/1 or table A-III/1. Functions specified in tables A-II/1 or A-III/1 respectively may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant education and training and meets the standards of competence prescribed in those tables for the functions concerned.

2 Every candidate for certification at the management level as the person having command of a ship of 500 gross tonnage or more, or the person upon whom the command of such a ship will fall in the event of the incapacity of the person in command, shall be required, in addition to compliance with the standard of competence specified in table A-II/1, to complete relevant education and training and meet the standards of competence for all of the functions prescribed in table A-II/2. Functions specified in the tables of chapter III of this part may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant education and training and meets the standards of competence prescribed in those tables for the functions concerned.

3 Every candidate for certification at the management level as the person responsible for the mechanical propulsion of a ship powered by main propulsion machinery of 750 kW or more, or the person upon whom such responsibility will fall in the event of the incapacity of the person responsible for the mechanical propulsion of the ship, shall be required, in addition to compliance with the standard of competence specified in table A-III/1, to complete relevant education and training and meet the standards of competence for all of the functions prescribed in table A-III/2, as appropriate. Functions specified in the tables of chapter II of this part may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant education and training and meets the standards of competence prescribed in those tables for the functions concerned.

4 Every candidate for certification at the support level:

.1 in navigation or marine engineering shall be required to complete relevant training and meet the standard of competence for the function prescribed in either table A-II/4 or table A-III/4. Functions specified in table A-III/4 or A-II/4 respectively may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant training and meets the standard of competence prescribed in those tables for the function concerned;

.2 as able seafarer deck shall be required, in addition to compliance with the standard of competence specified in table A-II/4, to complete relevant training and meet the standard of competence for all of the functions prescribed in table A-II/5. Functions specified in table A-III/4 or A-III/5 may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant training and meets the standard of competence prescribed in that (those) table(s) for the function(s) concerned; and

- .3 as able seafarer engine shall be required, in addition to compliance with the standard of competence specified in table A-III/4, to complete relevant training and meet the standard of competence for all of the functions prescribed in table A-III/5. Functions specified in table A-II/4 or A-II/5 may be added provided the candidate completes, as appropriate, additional relevant training and meets the standard of competence prescribed in that (those) table(s) for the function(s) concerned.

## Section A-VII/2

### *Certification of seafarers*

1 In accordance with the requirements of regulation VII/1, paragraph 1.3, every candidate for certification under the provisions of chapter VII at operational level in functions specified in tables A-II/1 and A-III/1 shall:

- .1 have approved seagoing service of not less than 12 months, which service shall include a period of at least six months performing engine-room duties under the supervision of a qualified engineer officer and, where the function of navigation is required, a period of at least six months performing bridge watchkeeping duties under the supervision of a qualified bridge watchkeeping officer; and
- .2 have completed, during this service, onboard training programmes approved as meeting the relevant requirements of sections A-II/1 and A-III/1 and documented in an approved training record book.

2 Every candidate for certification under the provisions of chapter VII at the management level in a combination of functions specified in tables A-II/2 and A-III/2 shall have approved seagoing service related to the functions to be shown in the endorsement to the certificate as follows:

- .1 *for persons other than those having command or responsibility for the mechanical propulsion of a ship* – 12 months performing duties at the operational level related to regulation III/2 or III/3 as appropriate and, where the function of navigation at the management level is required, at least 12 months performing bridge watchkeeping duties at the operational level;
- .2 *for those having command or the responsibility for the mechanical propulsion of a ship* – not less than 48 months, including the provisions in paragraph 2.1 of this section, performing, as a certificated officer, duties related to the functions to be shown in the endorsement to the certificate, of which 24 months shall be served performing functions set out in table A-III/1 and 24 months shall be served performing functions set out in tables A-III/1 and A-III/2.

3 In accordance with the requirements of regulation VII/1, paragraph 1.3, every candidate for certification under the provisions of chapter VII at support level in functions specified in tables A-II/4 and A-III/4 shall have completed:

- .1 approved seagoing service including not less than 12 months' experience, made up of:

- .1.1 not less than 6 months associated with navigational watchkeeping duties, and
      - .1.2 not less than 6 months associated with engine-room duties; or
    - .2 special training, either pre-sea or on board ship, including an approved period of seagoing service which shall not be less than 4 months, made up of:
      - .2.1 not less than 2 months associated with navigational watchkeeping duties, and
      - .2.2 not less than 2 months associated with engine-room duties;
    - .3 the seagoing service, training and experience required by paragraph 3.1 or 3.2 shall be carried out under the direct supervision of an appropriately qualified officer or rating.
- 4 In accordance with the requirements of regulation VII/1, paragraph 1.3, every candidate for certification under the provisions of chapter VII at support level in functions specified in tables A-II/5 and A-III/5 shall, while qualified to serve as a rating forming part of a navigational and engine-room watch, meet the standards of competence specified in sections A-II/5 and A-III/5 of the STCW Code and have completed:
  - .1 approved seagoing service of not less than 30 months, made up of:
    - .1.1 not less than 18 months associated with able seafarer deck duties, and
    - .1.2 not less than 12 months associated with able seafarer engine duties; or
  - .2 an approved training programme and not less than 18 months of approved seagoing service, made up of:
    - .2.1 not less than 12 months associated with able seafarer deck duties; and
    - .2.2 not less than 6 months associated with able seafarer engine duties; or
  - .3 an approved special integrated deck and engine training programme, including not less than 12 months' approved seagoing service in an integrated deck and engine department, made up of:
    - .3.1 not less than 6 months associated with able seafarer deck duties; and
    - .3.2 not less than 6 months associated with able seafarer engine duties.

### **Section A-VII/3**

*Principles governing the issue of alternative certificates*

(No provisions)

## CHAPTER VIII

### Standards regarding watchkeeping

#### Section A-VIII/1

##### *Fitness for duty*

- 1 Administrations shall take account of the danger posed by fatigue of seafarers, especially those whose duties involve the safe and secure operation of a ship.
- 2 All persons who are assigned duty as officer in charge of a watch or as a rating forming part of a watch and those whose duties involve designated safety, prevention of pollution and security duties shall be provided with a rest period of not less than:
  - .1 a minimum of 10 hours of rest in any 24-hour period; and
  - .2 77 hours in any 7-day period.
- 3 The hours of rest may be divided into no more than two periods, one of which shall be at least 6 hours in length, and the intervals between consecutive periods of rest shall not exceed 14 hours.
- 4 The requirements for rest periods laid down in paragraphs 2 and 3 need not be maintained in the case of an emergency or in other overriding operational conditions. Musters, fire-fighting and lifeboat drills, and drills prescribed by national laws and regulations and by international instruments, shall be conducted in a manner that minimizes the disturbance of rest periods and does not induce fatigue.
- 5 Administrations shall require that watch schedules be posted where they are easily accessible. The schedules shall be established in a standardized format\* in the working language or languages of the ship and in English.
- 6 When a seafarer is on call, such as when a machinery space is unattended, the seafarer shall have an adequate compensatory rest period if the normal period of rest is disturbed by call-outs to work.
- 7 Administrations shall require that records of daily hours of rest of seafarers be maintained in a standardized format\*, in the working language or languages of the ship and in English, to allow monitoring and verification of compliance with the provisions of this section. The seafarers shall receive a copy of the records pertaining to them, which shall be endorsed by the master or by a person authorized by the master and by the seafarers.
- 8 Nothing in this section shall be deemed to impair the right of the master of a ship to require a seafarer to perform any hours of work necessary for the immediate safety of the ship, persons on board or cargo, or for the purpose of giving assistance to other ships or persons in distress at sea. Accordingly, the master may suspend the schedule of hours of rest and require a

---

\* The IMO/ILO Guidelines for the development of tables of seafarers' shipboard working arrangements and formats of records of seafarers' hours of work or hours of rest may be used.

seafarer to perform any hours of work necessary until the normal situation has been restored. As soon as practicable after the normal situation has been restored, the master shall ensure that any seafarers who have performed work in a scheduled rest period are provided with an adequate period of rest.

[9] Nothing in this Convention shall prevent Parties from applying exceptions to the above limits, as provided for by other relevant international Conventions. These exceptions shall under no circumstances be less than 70 hours of rest in any 7-day period.

9bis Such exceptions shall, as far as possible, follow the standards set out, while taking into account the guidance regarding prevention of fatigue laid down in section B-VIII/1.]

[9] Parties may grant exemptions from the required hours of rest in paragraph 2.2 above provided that the rest period under no circumstances is less than 70 hours in any 7-day period. Such exemptions shall not be given for more than two consecutive weeks and shall, as far as possible, take into account the guidance regarding prevention of fatigue laid down in section B-VIII/1.]

10 Each Administration shall establish, for the purpose of preventing alcohol abuse, a limit of not greater than 0.05% blood alcohol level (BAC) or 0.25 mg/l alcohol in the breath or a quantity of alcohol leading to such alcohol concentration for masters, officers and other seafarers while performing designated safety, security and marine environmental duties.

## **Section A-VIII/2**

*Watchkeeping arrangements and principles to be observed*

### **PART 1 – CERTIFICATION**

1 The officer in charge of the navigational or deck watch shall be duly qualified in accordance with the provisions of chapter II or chapter VII appropriate to the duties related to navigational or deck watchkeeping.

2 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall be duly qualified in accordance with the provisions of chapter III or chapter VII appropriate to the duties related to engineering watchkeeping.

### **PART 2 – VOYAGE PLANNING**

#### **General requirements**

3 The intended voyage shall be planned in advance, taking into consideration all pertinent information, and any course laid down shall be checked before the voyage commences.

4 The chief engineer officer shall, in consultation with the master, determine in advance the needs of the intended voyage, taking into consideration the requirements for fuel, water, lubricants, chemicals, expendable and other spare parts, tools, supplies and any other requirements.

### **Planning prior to each voyage**

5 Prior to each voyage, the master of every ship shall ensure that the intended route from the port of departure to the first port of call is planned using adequate and appropriate charts and other nautical publications necessary for the intended voyage, containing accurate, complete and up-to-date information regarding those navigational limitations and hazards which are of a permanent or predictable nature and which are relevant to the safe navigation of the ship.

### **Verification and display of planned route**

6 When the route planning is verified, taking into consideration all pertinent information, the planned route shall be clearly displayed on appropriate charts and shall be continuously available to the officer in charge of the watch, who shall verify each course to be followed prior to using it during the voyage.

### **Deviation from planned route**

7 If a decision is made, during a voyage, to change the next port of call of the planned route, or if it is necessary for the ship to deviate substantially from the planned route for other reasons, then an amended route shall be planned prior to deviating substantially from the route originally planned.

## **PART 3 – WATCHKEEPING PRINCIPLES IN GENERAL**

8 Watches shall be carried out based on the following bridge and engine-room resource management principles:

- .1 proper arrangements for watchkeeping personnel shall be ensured in accordance with the situations;
- .2 any limitation in qualifications or fitness of individuals shall be taken into account when deploying watchkeeping personnel;
- .3 understanding of watchkeeping personnel regarding their individual roles, responsibility and team roles shall be established;
- .4 the master, chief engineer officer and officer in charge of watch duties shall maintain a proper watch, making the most effective use of the resources available, such as information, installations/equipment and other personnel;
- .5 watchkeeping personnel shall understand functions and operation of installations/equipment, and be familiar with handling them;
- .6 watchkeeping personnel shall understand information and how to respond to information from each station/installation/equipment;
- .7 information from the stations/installations/equipment shall be appropriately shared by all the watchkeeping personnel;
- .8 watchkeeping personnel shall maintain an exchange of appropriate communication in any situation; and

- .9 watchkeeping personnel shall notify the master/chief engineer officer/officer in charge of watch duties without any hesitation when in any doubt as to what action to take in the interest of safety.

## **PART 4 – WATCHKEEPING AT SEA**

### **Principles applying to watchkeeping generally**

- 9 Parties shall direct the attention of companies, masters, chief engineer officers and watchkeeping personnel to the following principles, which shall be observed to ensure that safe watches are maintained at all times.
- 10 The master of every ship is bound to ensure that watchkeeping arrangements are adequate for maintaining a safe navigational or cargo watch. Under the master's general direction, the officers of the navigational watch are responsible for navigating the ship safely during their periods of duty, when they will be particularly concerned with avoiding collision and stranding.
- 11 The chief engineer officer of every ship is bound, in consultation with the master, to ensure that watchkeeping arrangements are adequate to maintain a safe engineering watch.

### **Protection of marine environment**

- 12 The master, officers and ratings shall be aware of the serious effects of operational or accidental pollution of the marine environment and shall take all possible precautions to prevent such pollution, particularly within the framework of relevant international and port regulations.

### ***Part 4-1 – Principles to be observed in keeping a navigational watch***

- 13 The officer in charge of the navigational watch is the master's representative and is primarily responsible at all times for the safe navigation of the ship and for complying with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972.

### **Lookout**

- 14 A proper lookout shall be maintained at all times in compliance with rule 5 of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 and shall serve the purpose of:
- .1 maintaining a continuous state of vigilance by sight and hearing, as well as by all other available means, with regard to any significant change in the operating environment;
  - .2 fully appraising the situation and the risk of collision, stranding and other dangers to navigation; and
  - .3 detecting ships or aircraft in distress, shipwrecked persons, wrecks, debris and other hazards to safe navigation.
- 15 The lookout must be able to give full attention to the keeping of a proper lookout and no other duties shall be undertaken or assigned which could interfere with that task.

**16** The duties of the lookout and helmsperson are separate and the helmsperson shall not be considered to be the lookout while steering, except in small ships where an unobstructed all-round view is provided at the steering position and there is no impairment of night vision or other impediment to the keeping of a proper lookout. The officer in charge of the navigational watch may be the sole lookout in daylight provided that, on each such occasion:

- .1 the situation has been carefully assessed and it has been established without doubt that it is safe to do so;
- .2 full account has been taken of all relevant factors, including, but not limited to:
  - state of weather,
  - visibility,
  - traffic density,
  - proximity of dangers to navigation, and
  - the attention necessary when navigating in or near traffic separation schemes; and
- .3 assistance is immediately available to be summoned to the bridge when any change in the situation so requires.

**17** In determining that the composition of the navigational watch is adequate to ensure that a proper lookout can continuously be maintained, the master shall take into account all relevant factors, including those described in this section of the Code, as well as the following factors:

- .1 visibility, state of weather and sea;
- .2 traffic density, and other activities occurring in the area in which the vessel is navigating;
- .3 the attention necessary when navigating in or near traffic separation schemes or other routing measures;
- .4 the additional workload caused by the nature of the ship's functions, immediate operating requirements and anticipated manoeuvres;
- .5 the fitness for duty of any crew members on call who are assigned as members of the watch;
- .6 knowledge of, and confidence in, the professional competence of the ship's officers and crew;
- .7 the experience of each officer of the navigational watch, and the familiarity of that officer with the ship's equipment, procedures, and manoeuvring capability;
- .8 activities taking place on board the ship at any particular time, including radiocommunication activities, and the availability of assistance to be summoned immediately to the bridge when necessary;

- .9 the operational status of bridge instrumentation and controls, including alarm systems;
- .10 rudder and propeller control and ship manoeuvring characteristics;
- .11 the size of the ship and the field of vision available from the conning position;
- .12 the configuration of the bridge, to the extent such configuration might inhibit a member of the watch from detecting by sight or hearing any external development; and
- .13 any other relevant standard, procedure or guidance relating to watchkeeping arrangements and fitness for duty which has been adopted by the Organization.

### **Watch arrangements**

**18** When deciding the composition of the watch on the bridge, which may include appropriately qualified ratings, the following factors, *inter alia*, shall be taken into account:

- .1 at no time shall the bridge be left unattended;
- .2 weather conditions, visibility and whether there is daylight or darkness;
- .3 proximity of navigational hazards which may make it necessary for the officer in charge of the watch to carry out additional navigational duties;
- .4 use and operational condition of navigational aids such as **ECDIS**, radar or electronic position-indicating devices and any other equipment affecting the safe navigation of the ship;
- .5 whether the ship is fitted with automatic steering;
- .6 whether there are radio duties to be performed;
- .7 unmanned machinery space (UMS) controls, alarms and indicators provided on the bridge, procedures for their use and their limitations; and
- .8 any unusual demands on the navigational watch that may arise as a result of special operational circumstances.

### **Taking over the watch**

**19** The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall not hand over the watch to the relieving officer if there is reason to believe that the latter is not capable of carrying out the watchkeeping duties effectively, in which case the master shall be notified.

**20** The relieving officer shall ensure that the members of the relieving watch are fully capable of performing their duties, particularly as regards their adjustment to night vision. Relieving officers shall not take over the watch until their vision is fully adjusted to the light conditions.

**21** Prior to taking over the watch, relieving officers shall satisfy themselves as to the ship's estimated or true position and confirm its intended track, course and speed, and UMS controls as appropriate and shall note any dangers to navigation expected to be encountered during their watch.

**22** Relieving officers shall personally satisfy themselves regarding the:

- .1 standing orders and other special instructions of the master relating to navigation of the ship;
- .2 position, course, speed and draught of the ship;
- .3 prevailing and predicted tides, currents, weather, visibility and the effect of these factors upon course and speed;
- .4 procedures for the use of main engines to manoeuvre when the main engines are on bridge control; and
- .5 navigational situation, including, but not limited to:
  - .5.1 the operational condition of all navigational and safety equipment being used or likely to be used during the watch,
  - .5.2 the errors of gyro- and magnetic compasses,
  - .5.3 the presence and movement of ships in sight or known to be in the vicinity,
  - .5.4 the conditions and hazards likely to be encountered during the watch, and
  - .5.5 the possible effects of heel, trim, water density and squat on under-keel clearance.

**23** If, at any time, the officer in charge of the navigational watch is to be relieved when a manoeuvre or other action to avoid any hazard is taking place, the relief of that officer shall be deferred until such action has been completed.

### **Performing the navigational watch**

**24** The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall:

- .1 keep the watch on the bridge;
- .2 in no circumstances leave the bridge until properly relieved; and
- .3 continue to be responsible for the safe navigation of the ship, despite the presence of the master on the bridge, until informed specifically that the master has assumed that responsibility and this is mutually understood.

25 During the watch, the course steered, position and speed shall be checked at sufficiently frequent intervals, using any available navigational aids necessary, to ensure that the ship follows the planned course.

26 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall have full knowledge of the location and operation of all safety and navigational equipment on board the ship and shall be aware and take account of the operating limitations of such equipment.

27 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall not be assigned or undertake any duties which would interfere with the safe navigation of the ship.

28 When using radar, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall bear in mind the necessity to comply at all times with the provisions on the use of radar contained in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972 in force.

29 In cases of need, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall not hesitate to use the helm, engines and sound signalling apparatus. However, timely notice of intended variations of engine speed shall be given where possible or effective use shall be made of UMS engine controls provided on the bridge in accordance with the applicable procedures.

30 Officers of the navigational watch shall know the handling characteristics of their ship, including its stopping distances, and should appreciate that other ships may have different handling characteristics.

31 A proper record shall be kept during the watch of the movements and activities relating to the navigation of the ship.

32 It is of special importance that at all times the officer in charge of the navigational watch ensures that a proper lookout is maintained. In a ship with a separate chartroom, the officer in charge of the navigational watch may visit the chartroom, when essential, for a short period for the necessary performance of navigational duties, but shall first ensure that it is safe to do so and that proper lookout is maintained.

33 Operational tests of shipboard navigational equipment shall be carried out at sea as frequently as practicable and as circumstances permit, in particular before hazardous conditions affecting navigation are expected. Whenever appropriate, these tests shall be recorded. Such tests shall also be carried out prior to port arrival and departure.

34 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall make regular checks to ensure that:

- .1 the person steering the ship or the automatic pilot is steering the correct course;
- .2 the standard compass error is determined at least once a watch and, when possible, after any major alteration of course; the standard and gyro-compasses are frequently compared and repeaters are synchronized with their master compass;
- .3 the automatic pilot is tested manually at least once a watch;

- .4 the navigation and signal lights and other navigational equipment are functioning properly;
- .5 the radio equipment is functioning properly in accordance with paragraph 86 of this section; and
- .6 the UMS controls, alarms and indicators are functioning properly.

35 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall bear in mind the necessity to comply at all times with the requirements in force of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974\*. The officer of the navigational watch shall take into account:

- .1 the need to station a person to steer the ship and to put the steering into manual control in good time to allow any potentially hazardous situation to be dealt with in a safe manner; and
- .2 that, with a ship under automatic steering, it is highly dangerous to allow a situation to develop to the point where the officer in charge of the navigational watch is without assistance and has to break the continuity of the lookout in order to take emergency action.

36 Officers of the navigational watch shall be thoroughly familiar with the use of all electronic navigational aids carried, including their capabilities and limitations, and shall use each of these aids when appropriate and shall bear in mind that the echo-sounder is a valuable navigational aid.

37 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall use the radar whenever restricted visibility is encountered or expected, and at all times in congested waters, having due regard to its limitations.

38 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall ensure that the range scales employed are changed at sufficiently frequent intervals so that echoes are detected as early as possible. It shall be borne in mind that small or poor echoes may escape detection.

39 Whenever radar is in use, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall select an appropriate range scale and observe the display carefully, and shall ensure that plotting or systematic analysis is commenced in ample time.

40 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall notify the master immediately:

- .1 if restricted visibility is encountered or expected;
- .2 if the traffic conditions or the movements of other ships are causing concern;
- .3 if difficulty is experienced in maintaining course;
- .4 on failure to sight land, or a navigation mark or to obtain soundings by the expected time;

---

\*

See SOLAS regulations V/24, V/25 and V/26.

- .5 if, unexpectedly, land or a navigation mark is sighted or a change in soundings occurs;
- .6 on breakdown of the engines, propulsion machinery remote control, steering gear or any essential navigational equipment, alarm or indicator;
- .7 if the radio equipment malfunctions;
- .8 in heavy weather, if in any doubt about the possibility of weather damage;
- .9 if the ship meets any hazard to navigation, such as ice or a derelict; and
- .10 in any other emergency or if in any doubt.

41 Despite the requirement to notify the master immediately in the foregoing circumstances, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall, in addition, not hesitate to take immediate action for the safety of the ship, where circumstances so require.

42 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall give watchkeeping personnel all appropriate instructions and information which will ensure the keeping of a safe watch, including a proper lookout.

#### **Watchkeeping under different conditions and in different areas**

##### *Clear weather*

43 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall take frequent and accurate compass bearings of approaching ships as a means of early detection of risk of collision and shall bear in mind that such risk may sometimes exist even when an appreciable bearing change is evident, particularly when approaching a very large ship or a tow or when approaching a ship at close range. The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall also take early and positive action in compliance with the applicable International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, and subsequently check that such action is having the desired effect.

44 In clear weather, whenever possible, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall carry out radar practice.

##### *Restricted visibility*

45 When restricted visibility is encountered or expected, the first responsibility of the officer in charge of the navigational watch is to comply with the relevant rules of the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972, with particular regard to the sounding of fog signals, proceeding at a safe speed and having the engines ready for immediate manoeuvre. In addition, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall:

- .1 inform the master;
- .2 post a proper lookout;

- .3 exhibit navigation lights; and
- .4 operate and use the radar.

*In hours of darkness*

46 The master and the officer in charge of the navigational watch, when arranging lookout duty, shall have due regard to the bridge equipment and navigational aids available for use, their limitations, procedures and safeguards implemented.

*Coastal and congested waters*

47 The largest scale chart on board, suitable for the area and corrected with the latest available information, shall be used. Fixes shall be taken at frequent intervals, and shall be carried out by more than one method whenever circumstances allow. When using ECDIS, appropriate usage code (scale) electronic navigational charts shall be used and the ship's position shall be checked by an independent means of position fixing at appropriate intervals.

48 The officer in charge of the navigational watch shall positively identify all relevant navigation marks.

*Navigation with pilot on board*

49 Despite the duties and obligations of pilots, their presence on board does not relieve the master or the officer in charge of the navigational watch from their duties and obligations for the safety of the ship. The master and the pilot shall exchange information regarding navigation procedures, local conditions and the ship's characteristics. The master and/or the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall co-operate closely with the pilot and maintain an accurate check on the ship's position and movement.

50 If in any doubt as to the pilot's actions or intentions, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall seek clarification from the pilot and, if doubt still exists, shall notify the master immediately and take whatever action is necessary before the master arrives.

*Ship at anchor*

51 If the master considers it necessary, a continuous navigational watch shall be maintained at anchor. While at anchor, the officer in charge of the navigational watch shall:

- .1 determine and plot the ship's position on the appropriate chart as soon as practicable;
- .2 when circumstances permit, check at sufficiently frequent intervals whether the ship is remaining securely at anchor by taking bearings of fixed navigation marks or readily identifiable shore objects;
- .3 ensure that proper lookout is maintained;
- .4 ensure that inspection rounds of the ship are made periodically;

- .5 observe meteorological and tidal conditions and the state of the sea;
- .6 notify the master and undertake all necessary measures if the ship drags anchor;
- .7 ensure that the state of readiness of the main engines and other machinery is in accordance with the master's instructions;
- .8 if visibility deteriorates, notify the master;
- .9 ensure that the ship exhibits the appropriate lights and shapes and that appropriate sound signals are made in accordance with all applicable regulations; and
- .10 take measures to protect the environment from pollution by the ship and comply with applicable pollution regulations.

***Part 4-2 – Principles to be observed in keeping an engineering watch***

52 The term *engineering watch* as used in parts 4-2, 5-2 and 5-4 of this section means either a person or a group of personnel comprising the watch or a period of responsibility for an officer during which the physical presence in machinery spaces of that officer may or may not be required.

53 The *officer in charge of the engineering watch* is the chief engineer officer's representative and is primarily responsible, at all times, for the safe and efficient operation and upkeep of machinery affecting the safety of the ship and is responsible for the inspection, operation and testing, as required, of all machinery and equipment under the responsibility of the engineering watch.

**Watch arrangements**

54 The composition of the engineering watch shall, at all times, be adequate to ensure the safe operation of all machinery affecting the operation of the ship, in either automated or manual mode, and be appropriate to the prevailing circumstances and conditions.

55 When deciding the composition of the engineering watch, which may include appropriately qualified ratings, the following criteria, *inter alia*, shall be taken into account:

- .1 the type of ship and the type and condition of the machinery;
- .2 the adequate supervision, at all times, of machinery affecting the safe operation of the ship;
- .3 any special modes of operation dictated by conditions such as weather, ice, contaminated water, shallow water, emergency conditions, damage containment or pollution abatement;
- .4 the qualifications and experience of the engineering watch;
- .5 the safety of life, ship, cargo and port, and protection of the environment;

- .6 the observance of international, national and local regulations; and
- .7 maintaining the normal operations of the ship.

### **Taking over the watch**

56 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall not hand over the watch to the relieving officer if there is reason to believe that the latter is obviously not capable of carrying out the watchkeeping duties effectively, in which case the chief engineer officer shall be notified.

57 The relieving officer of the engineering watch shall ensure that the members of the relieving engineering watch are apparently fully capable of performing their duties effectively.

58 Prior to taking over the engineering watch, relieving officers shall satisfy themselves regarding at least the following:

- .1 the standing orders and special instructions of the chief engineer officer relating to the operation of the ship's systems and machinery;
- .2 the nature of all work being performed on machinery and systems, the personnel involved and potential hazards;
- .3 the level and, where applicable, the condition of water or residues in bilges, ballast tanks, slop tanks, reserve tanks, fresh water tanks, sewage tanks and any special requirements for use or disposal of the contents thereof;
- .4 the condition and level of fuel in the reserve tanks, settling tank, day tank and other fuel storage facilities;
- .5 any special requirements relating to sanitary system disposals;
- .6 condition and mode of operation of the various main and auxiliary systems, including the electrical power distribution system;
- .7 where applicable, the condition of monitoring and control console equipment, and which equipment is being operated manually;
- .8 where applicable, the condition and mode of operation of automatic boiler controls such as flame safeguard control systems, limit control systems, combustion control systems, fuel-supply control systems and other equipment related to the operation of steam boilers;
- .9 any potentially adverse conditions resulting from bad weather, ice, or contaminated or shallow water;
- .10 any special modes of operation dictated by equipment failure or adverse ship conditions;
- .11 the reports of engine-room ratings relating to their assigned duties;

- .12 the availability of fire-fighting appliances; and
- .13 the state of completion of the engine-room log.

### **Performing the engineering watch**

59 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that the established watchkeeping arrangements are maintained and that, under direction, engine-room ratings, if forming part of the engineering watch, assist in the safe and efficient operation of the propulsion machinery and auxiliary equipment.

60 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall continue to be responsible for machinery-space operations, despite the presence of the chief engineer officer in the machinery spaces, until specifically informed that the chief engineer officer has assumed that responsibility and this is mutually understood.

61 All members of the engineering watch shall be familiar with their assigned watchkeeping duties. In addition, every member shall, with respect to the ship they are serving in, have knowledge of:

- .1 the use of appropriate internal communication systems;
- .2 the escape routes from machinery spaces;
- .3 the engine-room alarm systems and be able to distinguish between the various alarms, with special reference to the fire-extinguishing media alarm; and
- .4 the number, location and types of fire-fighting equipment and damage-control gear in the machinery spaces, together with their use and the various safety precautions to be observed.

62 Any machinery not functioning properly, expected to malfunction or requiring special service shall be noted along with any action already taken. Plans shall be made for any further action if required.

63 When the machinery spaces are in the manned condition, the officer in charge of the engineering watch shall at all times be readily capable of operating the propulsion equipment in response to needs for changes in direction or speed.

64 When the machinery spaces are in the periodic unmanned condition, the designated duty officer in charge of the engineering watch shall be immediately available and on call to attend the machinery spaces.

65 All bridge orders shall be promptly executed. Changes in direction or speed of the main propulsion units shall be recorded, except where an Administration has determined that the size or characteristics of a particular ship make such recording impracticable. The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that the main propulsion unit controls, when in the manual mode of operation, are continuously attended under stand-by or manoeuvring conditions.

66 Due attention shall be paid to the ongoing maintenance and support of all machinery, including mechanical, electrical, electronic, hydraulic and pneumatic systems, their control apparatus and associated safety equipment, all accommodation service systems equipment and the recording of stores and spare gear usage.

67 The chief engineer officer shall ensure that the officer in charge of the engineering watch is informed of all preventive maintenance, damage control, or repair operations to be performed during the engineering watch. The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall be responsible for the isolation, bypassing and adjustment of all machinery under the responsibility of the engineering watch that is to be worked on, and shall record all work carried out.

68 When the engine-room is put in a stand-by condition, the officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that all machinery and equipment which may be used during manoeuvring is in a state of immediate readiness and that an adequate reserve of power is available for steering gear and other requirements.

69 Officers in charge of an engineering watch shall not be assigned or undertake any duties which would interfere with their supervisory duties in respect of the main propulsion system and ancillary equipment. They shall keep the main propulsion plant and auxiliary systems under constant supervision until properly relieved, and shall periodically inspect the machinery in their charge. They shall also ensure that adequate rounds of the machinery and steering-gear spaces are made for the purpose of observing and reporting equipment malfunctions or breakdowns, performing or directing routine adjustments, required upkeep and any other necessary tasks.

70 Officers in charge of an engineering watch shall direct any other member of the engineering watch to inform them of potentially hazardous conditions which may adversely affect the machinery or jeopardize the safety of life or of the ship.

71 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that the machinery space watch is supervised, and shall arrange for substitute personnel in the event of the incapacity of any engineering watch personnel. The engineering watch shall not leave the machinery spaces unsupervised in a manner that would prevent the manual operation of the engine-room plant or throttles.

72 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall take the action necessary to contain the effects of damage resulting from equipment breakdown, fire, flooding, rupture, collision, stranding, or other cause.

73 Before going off duty, the officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that all events related to the main and auxiliary machinery which have occurred during the engineering watch are suitably recorded.

74 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall co-operate with any engineer in charge of maintenance work during all preventive maintenance, damage control or repairs. This shall include, but not necessarily be limited to:

- .1 isolating and bypassing machinery to be worked on;
- .2 adjusting the remaining plant to function adequately and safely during the maintenance period;

- .3 recording, in the engine-room log or other suitable document, the equipment worked on and the personnel involved, and which safety steps have been taken and by whom, for the benefit of relieving officers and for record purposes; and
- .4 testing and putting into service, when necessary, the repaired machinery or equipment.

75 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that any engine-room ratings who perform maintenance duties are available to assist in the manual operation of machinery in the event of automatic equipment failure.

76 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall bear in mind that changes in speed, resulting from machinery malfunction, or any loss of steering may imperil the safety of the ship and life at sea. The bridge shall be immediately notified in the event of fire and of any impending action in machinery spaces that may cause reduction in the ship's speed, imminent steering failure, stoppage of the ship's propulsion system or any alteration in the generation of electric power or similar threat to safety. This notification, where possible, shall be accomplished before changes are made, in order to afford the bridge the maximum available time to take whatever action is possible to avoid a potential marine casualty.

77 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall notify the chief engineer officer without delay:

- .1 when engine damage or a malfunction occurs which may be such as to endanger the safe operation of the ship;
- .2 when any malfunction occurs which, it is believed, may cause damage or breakdown of propulsion machinery, auxiliary machinery or monitoring and governing systems; and
- .3 in any emergency or if in any doubt as to what decision or measures to take.

78 Despite the requirement to notify the chief engineer officer in the foregoing circumstances, the officer in charge of the engineering watch shall not hesitate to take immediate action for the safety of the ship, its machinery and crew where circumstances require.

79 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall give the watchkeeping personnel all appropriate instructions and information which will ensure the keeping of a safe engineering watch. Routine machinery upkeep, performed as incidental tasks as a part of keeping a safe watch, shall be set up as an integral part of the watch routine. Detailed repair maintenance involving repairs to electrical, mechanical, hydraulic, pneumatic or applicable electronic equipment throughout the ship shall be performed with the cognizance of the officer in charge of the engineering watch and chief engineer officer. These repairs shall be recorded.

## **Engineering watchkeeping under different conditions and in different areas**

### *Restricted visibility*

80 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that permanent air or steam pressure is available for sound signals and that at all times bridge orders relating to changes in speed or direction of operation are immediately implemented and, in addition, that auxiliary machinery used for manoeuvring is readily available.

### *Coastal and congested waters*

81 The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that all machinery involved with the manoeuvring of the ship can immediately be placed in the manual mode of operation when notified that the ship is in congested waters. The officer in charge of the engineering watch shall also ensure that an adequate reserve of power is available for steering and other manoeuvring requirements. Emergency steering and other auxiliary equipment shall be ready for immediate operation.

### *Ship at anchor*

82 At an unsheltered anchorage the chief engineer officer shall consult with the master whether or not to maintain the same engineering watch as when under way.

83 When a ship is at anchor in an open roadstead or any other virtually “at-sea” condition, the engineer officer in charge of the engineering watch shall ensure that:

- .1 an efficient engineering watch is kept;
- .2 periodic inspection is made of all operating and stand-by machinery;
- .3 main and auxiliary machinery is maintained in a state of readiness in accordance with orders from the bridge;
- .4 measures are taken to protect the environment from pollution by the ship, and that applicable pollution-prevention regulations are complied with; and
- .5 all damage-control and fire-fighting systems are in readiness.

## **Part 4-3 – Principles to be observed in keeping a radio watch**

### **General provisions**

84 Administrations shall direct the attention of companies, masters and radio watchkeeping personnel to comply with the following provisions to ensure that an adequate safety radio watch is maintained while a ship is at sea. In complying with this Code, account shall be taken of the Radio Regulations.

### **Watch arrangements**

- 85 In deciding the arrangements for the radio watch, the master of every seagoing ship shall:
- .1 ensure that the radio watch is maintained in accordance with the relevant provisions of the Radio Regulations and the SOLAS Convention;
  - .2 ensure that the primary duties for radio watchkeeping are not adversely affected by attending to radio traffic not relevant to the safe movement of the ship and safety of navigation; and
  - .3 take into account the radio equipment fitted on board and its operational status.

### **Performing the radio watch**

- 86 The radio operator performing radio watchkeeping duties shall:
- .1 ensure that watch is maintained on the frequencies specified in the Radio Regulations and the SOLAS Convention; and
  - .2 while on duty, regularly check the operation of the radio equipment and its sources of energy and report to the master any observed failure of this equipment.

87 The requirements of the Radio Regulations and the SOLAS Convention on keeping a radiotelegraph or radio log, as appropriate, shall be complied with.

88 The maintenance of radio records, in compliance with the requirements of the Radio Regulations and the SOLAS Convention, is the responsibility of the radio operator designated as having primary responsibility for radiocommunications during distress incidents. The following shall be recorded, together with the times at which they occur:

- .1 a summary of distress, urgency and safety radiocommunications;
- .2 important incidents relating to the radio service;
- .3 where appropriate, the position of the ship at least once per day; and
- .4 a summary of the condition of the radio equipment, including its sources of energy.

89 The radio records shall be kept at the distress communications operating position, and shall be made available:

- .1 for inspection by the master; and
- .2 for inspection by any authorized official of the Administration and by any duly authorized officer exercising control under article X of the Convention.

## **PART 5 – WATCHKEEPING IN PORT**

### *Principles applying to all watchkeeping*

#### **General**

90 On any ship safely moored or safely at anchor under normal circumstances in port, the master shall arrange for an appropriate and effective watch to be maintained for the purpose of safety. Special requirements may be necessary for special types of ships' propulsion systems or ancillary equipment and for ships carrying hazardous, dangerous, toxic or highly flammable materials or other special types of cargo.

#### **Watch arrangements**

91 Arrangements for keeping a deck watch when the ship is in port shall at all times be adequate to:

- .1 ensure the safety of life, of the ship, the port and the environment, and the safe operation of all machinery related to cargo operation;
- .2 observe international, national and local rules; and
- .3 maintain order and the normal routine of the ship.

92 The master shall decide the composition and duration of the deck watch depending on the conditions of mooring, type of the ship and character of duties.

93 If the master considers it necessary, a qualified officer shall be in charge of the deck watch.

94 The necessary equipment shall be so arranged as to provide for efficient watchkeeping.

95 The chief engineer officer, in consultation with the master, shall ensure that engineering watchkeeping arrangements are adequate to maintain a safe engineering watch while in port. When deciding the composition of the engineering watch, which may include appropriate engine-room ratings, the following points are among those to be taken into account:

- .1 on all ships of 3,000 kW propulsion power and over there shall always be an officer in charge of the engineering watch;
- .2 on ships of less than 3,000 kW propulsion power there may be, at the master's discretion and in consultation with the chief engineer officer, no officer in charge of the engineering watch; and
- .3 officers, while in charge of an engineering watch, shall not be assigned or undertake any task or duty which would interfere with their supervisory duty in respect of the ship's machinery system.

### **Taking over the watch**

96 Officers in charge of the deck or engineering watch shall not hand over the watch to their relieving officer if they have any reason to believe that the latter is obviously not capable of carrying out watchkeeping duties effectively, in which case the master or chief engineer shall be notified accordingly. Relieving officers of the deck or engineering watch shall ensure that all members of their watch are apparently fully capable of performing their duties effectively.

97 If, at the moment of handing over the deck or engineering watch, an important operation is being performed, it shall be concluded by the officer being relieved, except when ordered otherwise by the master or chief engineer officer.

#### **Part 5-1 – Taking over the deck watch**

98 Prior to taking over the deck watch, the relieving officer shall be informed by the officer in charge of the deck watch as to **the following:**

- .1 the depth of the water at the berth, the ship's draught, the level and time of high and low waters; the securing of the moorings, the arrangement of anchors and the scope of the anchor chain, and other mooring features important to the safety of the ship; the state of main engines and their availability for emergency use;
- .2 all work to be performed on board the ship; the nature, amount and disposition of cargo loaded or remaining, and any residue on board after unloading the ship;
- .3 the level of water in bilges and ballast tanks;
- .4 the signals or lights being exhibited or sounded;
- .5 the number of crew members required to be on board and the presence of any other persons on board;
- .6 the state of fire-fighting appliances;
- .7 any special port regulations;
- .8 the master's standing and special orders;
- .9 the lines of communication available between the ship and shore personnel, including port authorities, in the event of an emergency arising or assistance being required;
- .10 any other circumstances of importance to the safety of the ship, its crew, cargo or protection of the environment from pollution; and
- .11 the procedures for notifying the appropriate authority of any environmental pollution resulting from ship activities.

- 99 Relieving officers, before assuming charge of the deck watch, shall verify that:
- .1 the securing of moorings and anchor chain is adequate;
  - .2 the appropriate signals or lights are properly exhibited or sounded;
  - .3 safety measures and fire-protection regulations are being maintained;
  - .4 they are aware of the nature of any hazardous or dangerous cargo being loaded or discharged and the appropriate action to be taken in the event of any spillage or fire; **and**
  - .5 no external conditions or circumstances imperil the ship and that it does not imperil others.

**Part 5-2 – Taking over the engineering watch**

100 Prior to taking over the engineering watch, the relieving officer shall be informed by the officer in charge of the engineering watch as to:

- .1 the standing orders of the day, any special orders relating to the ship operations, maintenance functions, repairs to the ship's machinery or control equipment;
- .2 the nature of all work being performed on machinery and systems on board ship, personnel involved and potential hazards;
- .3 the level and condition, where applicable, of water or residue in bilges, ballast tanks, slop tanks, sewage tanks, reserve tanks and special requirements for the use or disposal of the contents thereof;
- .4 any special requirements relating to sanitary system disposals;
- .5 the condition and state of readiness of portable fire-extinguishing equipment and fixed fire-extinguishing installations and fire-detection systems;
- .6 authorized repair personnel on board engaged in engineering activities, their work locations and repair functions and other authorized persons on board and the required crew;
- .7 any port regulations pertaining to ship effluents, fire-fighting requirements and ship readiness, particularly during potential bad weather conditions;
- .8 the lines of communication available between the ship and shore personnel, including port authorities, in the event of an emergency arising or assistance being required;
- .9 any other circumstance of importance to the safety of the ship, its crew, cargo or the protection of the environment from pollution; and
- .10 the procedures for notifying the appropriate authority of environmental pollution resulting from engineering activities.

101 Relieving officers, before assuming charge of the engineering watch, shall satisfy themselves that they are fully informed by the officer being relieved, as outlined above, and:

- .1 be familiar with existing and potential sources of power, heat and lighting and their distribution;
- .2 know the availability and condition of ship's fuel, lubricants and all water supplies; and
- .3 be ready to prepare the ship and its machinery, as far as is possible, for stand-by or emergency conditions as required.

**Part 5-3 – Performing the deck watch**

102 The officer in charge of the deck watch shall:

- .1 make rounds to inspect the ship at appropriate intervals;
- .2 pay particular attention to:
  - .2.1 the condition and securing of the gangway, anchor chain and moorings, especially at the turn of the tide and in berths with a large rise and fall, if necessary, taking measures to ensure that they are in normal working condition,
  - .2.2 the draught, under-keel clearance and the general state of the ship, to avoid dangerous listing or trim during cargo handling or ballasting,
  - .2.3 the weather and sea state,
  - .2.4 the observance of all regulations concerning safety and fire protection,
  - .2.5 the water level in bilges and tanks,
  - .2.6 all persons on board and their location, especially those in remote or enclosed spaces, and
  - .2.7 the exhibition and sounding, where appropriate, of lights and signals;
- .3 in bad weather, or on receiving a storm warning, take the necessary measures to protect the ship, persons on board and cargo;
- .4 take every precaution to prevent pollution of the environment by the ship;
- .5 in an emergency threatening the safety of the ship, raise the alarm, inform the master, take all possible measures to prevent any damage to the ship, its cargo and persons on board, and, if necessary, request assistance from the shore authorities or neighbouring ships;

- .6 be aware of the ship's stability condition so that, in the event of fire, the shore fire-fighting authority may be advised of the approximate quantity of water that can be pumped on board without endangering the ship;
- .7 offer assistance to ships or persons in distress;
- .8 take necessary precautions to prevent accidents or damage when propellers are to be turned; and
- .9 enter, in the appropriate log-book, all important events affecting the ship.

**Part 5-4 – Performing the engineering watch**

103 Officers in charge of the engineering watch shall pay particular attention to:

- .1 the observance of all orders, special operating procedures and regulations concerning hazardous conditions and their prevention in all areas in their charge;
- .2 the instrumentation and control systems, monitoring of all power supplies, components and systems in operation;
- .3 the techniques, methods and procedures necessary to prevent violation of the pollution regulations of the local authorities; and
- .4 the state of the bilges.

104 Officers in charge of the engineering watch shall:

- .1 in emergencies, raise the alarm when, in their opinion, the situation so demands, and take all possible measures to prevent damage to the ship, persons on board and cargo;
- .2 be aware of the deck officer's needs relating to the equipment required in the loading or unloading of the cargo and the additional requirements of the ballast and other ship stability control systems;
- .3 make frequent rounds of inspection to determine possible equipment malfunction or failure, and take immediate remedial action to ensure the safety of the ship, of cargo operations, of the port and the environment;
- .4 ensure that the necessary precautions are taken, within their area of responsibility, to prevent accidents or damage to the various electrical, electronic, hydraulic, pneumatic and mechanical systems of the ship; and
- .5 ensure that all important events affecting the operation, adjustment or repair of the ship's machinery are satisfactorily recorded.

**Part 5-5 – Watch in port on ships carrying hazardous cargo**

**General**

105 The master of every ship carrying cargo that is hazardous, whether explosive, flammable, toxic, health-threatening or environment-polluting, shall ensure that safe watchkeeping arrangements are maintained. On ships carrying hazardous cargo in bulk, this will be achieved by the ready availability on board of a duly qualified officer or officers, and ratings where appropriate, even when the ship is safely moored or safely at anchor in port.

106 On ships carrying hazardous cargo other than in bulk, the master shall take full account of the nature, quantity, packing and stowage of the hazardous cargo and of any special conditions on board, afloat and ashore.

**Part 5-6 – Cargo watch**

107 Officers with responsibility for the planning and conduct of cargo operations shall ensure that such operations are conducted safely through the control of the specific risks, including when non-ship's personnel are involved.

\*\*\*